Mac OS® X Leopard™ Just the Steps™ FOR DUMMES®

by Keith Underdahl



Mac OS® X Leopard™ Just the Steps™ FOR DUMMES®

by Keith Underdahl



About the Author

Keith Underdahl is a graphic designer, electronic publishing specialist, and freelance writer from Oregon. He has written numerous books, including *Digital Video For Dummies* 4th Edition, Adobe Premiere Elements For Dummies, Wi-Fi Home Networking Just the Steps For Dummies, and more.

Author's Acknowledgments

First and foremost, I wish to thank my family for their patience as I introduced Macs into our home for the first time. I have been using Macintosh computers in my work for over a decade, but having them at home was new and there was some initial skepticism. Fortunately, it didn't take long for everyone to realize that these Macs actually do work pretty well!

I want to thank Bob Woerner and Wiley for bringing me on for this book, and the Wiley publishing team who helped put it all together. Nicole Sholly and Jennifer Riggs turned my cocktail napkin scribblings into something readable, and Dennis Cohen made sure that it was all technically accurate.

I also received assistance from Andy Marken and Bob "Dr. Mac" LeVitus. Thanks folks! Mac OS[®] X Leopard[™] Just the Steps[™] For Dummies[®]

Published by Wiley Publishing, Inc. 111 River Street Hoboken, NJ 07030-5774

www.wiley.com

Copyright © 2007 by Wiley Publishing, Inc., Indianapolis, Indiana

Published by Wiley Publishing, Inc., Indianapolis, Indiana

Published simultaneously in Canada

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, (978) 750-8400, fax (978) 646-8600. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Legal Department, Wiley Publishing, Inc., 10475 Crosspoint Blvd., Indianapolis, IN 46256, (317) 572-3447, fax (317) 572-4355, or online at http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions.

Trademarks: Wiley, the Wiley Publishing logo, For Dummies, the Dummies Man logo, A Reference for the Rest of Us!, The Dummies Way, Dummies Daily, The Fun and Easy Way, Dummies.com, Just the Steps, and related trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and other countries, and may not be used without written permission. Mac OS is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. Wiley Publishing, Inc., is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book.

LIMIT OF LIABILITY/DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY: THE PUBLISHER AND THE AUTHOR MAKE NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES WITH RESPECT TO THE ACCURACY OR COMPLETENESS OF THE CONTENTS OF THIS WORK AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ALL WAR-RANTIES, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION WARRANTIES OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO WARRANTY MAY BE CREATED OR EXTENDED BY SALES OR PROMOTIONAL MATERIALS. THE ADVICE AND STRATEGIES CONTAINED HEREIN MAY NOT BE SUITABLE FOR EVERY SITUATION. THIS WORK IS SOLD WITH THE UNDERSTANDING THAT THE PUBLISHER IS NOT ENGAGED IN RENDERING LEGAL, ACCOUNTING, OR OTHER PROFESSIONAL SERVICES. IF PROFESSIONAL ASSISTANCE IS REQUIRED, THE SERVICES OF A COM-PETENT PROFESSIONAL PERSON SHOULD BE SOUGHT. NEITHER THE PUBLISHER NOR THE AUTHOR SHALL BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES ARISING HEREFROM. THE FACT THAT AN ORGANIZATION OR WEBSITE IS REFERRED TO IN THIS WORK AS A CITATION AND/OR A POTENTIAL SOURCE OF FURTHER INFORMATION DOES NOT MEAN THAT THE AUTHOR OR THE PUBLISHER ENDORSES THE INFOR-MATION THE ORGANIZATION OR WEBSITE MAY PROVIDE OR RECOMMENDATIONS IT MAY MAKE. FURTHER, READERS SHOULD BE AWARE THAT INTERNET WEBSITES LISTED IN THIS WORK MAY HAVE CHANGED OR DISAPPEARED BETWEEN WHEN THIS WORK WAS WRITTEN AND WHEN IT IS READ.

For general information on our other products and services, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at 800-762-2974, outside the U.S. at 317-572-3993, or fax 317-572-4002.

For technical support, please visit www.wiley.com/techsupport.

Wiley also publishes its books in a variety of electronic formats. Some content that appears in print may not be available in electronic books.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2007920005

ISBN: 978-0-470-10967-0

Manufactured in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1



Publisher's Acknowledgments

We're proud of this book; please send us your comments through our online registration form located at www.dummies.com/register/. Some of the people who helped bring this book to market include the following:

Acquisitions, Editorial, and Media Development Project Editor: Nicole Sholly Senior Acquisitions Editor: Bob Woerner Copy Editor: Jennifer Riggs Technical Editor: Dennis R. Cohen Editorial Manager: Kevin Kirschner Editorial Assistant: Amanda Foxworth Sr. Editorial Assistant: Cherie Case Cartoons: Rich Tennant (www.the5thwave.com) Composition Services Project Coordinator: Kristie Rees Layout and Graphics: Stacie Brooks, Melanee Prendergast, Brent Savage, Erin Zeltner Proofreader: Sossity R. Smith Indexer: Rebecca R. Plunkett Anniversary Logo Design: Richard Pacifico

Publishing and Editorial for Technology Dummies

Richard Swadley, Vice President and Executive Group Publisher Andy Cummings, Vice President and Publisher Mary Bednarek, Executive Acquisitions Director Mary C. Corder, Editorial Director Publishing for Consumer Dummies Diane Graves Steele, Vice President and Publisher Joyce Pepple, Acquisitions Director Composition Services Gerry Fahey, Vice President of Production Services Debbie Stailey, Director of Composition Services

Contents at a Glance

Introduction1				
Part	1: Using OS X	3		
		_		

Chapter 1: Customizing OS A	
Chapter 2: Creating and Managing User Accounts	19
Chapter 3: Managing Files and Folders	27
Chapter 4: Adjusting System Preferences	

Chapter 5: Utilizing OS X Applications	.51
Chapter 6: Using Productivity Software	
Chapter 7: Using Dashboard	.71

Part 3: Going Online with Your Mac......81

Chapter 8: Sending E-Mail and Browsing the Internet	83
Chapter 9: Using a .Mac Account	95
Chapter 10: Blogging and Web Designing with iWeb	103
Chapter 11: Chatting on Your Mac	

Part 4: Using Multimedia119

Chapter 12: Using iTunes and iPods	121
Chapter 13: Working with Third Party MP3 Players	131
Chapter 14: Watching Videos and DVDs	137
Chapter 15: Viewing, Organizing, and Improving Pictures	145
Chapter 16: Making Movies	155

Part .	5:	Networking	Your	Мас	
--------	----	------------	------	-----	--

Chapter 17: Networking Wirelessly with AirPort	169
Chapter 18: Sharing Resources	177
Chapter 19: Connecting to Windows Networks	187
Chapter 20: Networking Safely	195

Part 6: Extending Your Mac's Capabilities......205

1. Jan	227
Chapter 24: Installing and Using Windows Programs	221
Chapter 23: Upgrading Your Mac	217
Chapter 22: Networking with Older Macs	211
Chapter 21: Connecting to Bluetooth Devices	207
•	

Index22	2)	7	,
---------	---	---	---	---

Apple first started producing Macintosh computers in the 1980s, they've placed an emphasis on quality, ease-of-use, and stability. Modern Macs running the latest OS X operating system are among the most powerful and dependable personal computers you can buy, and they're versatile enough to meet virtually any personal or professional need you may have.

About This Book

Macs are user friendly, but they're still computers, so you must follow certain steps to complete tasks, like setting up an e-mail account, accessing a Wi-Fi hotspot, transferring music to an iPod, customizing the OS X interface, creating a network, and almost any other computer task you can imagine. This book provides the steps you need to get running quickly, without having to pour through extra narratives or examples that you probably don't need anyway. And because a picture is worth a thousand words, all the steps in this book are accompanied by figures that walk you visually through each task.

Why You Need This Book

Whether you're new to Macs or you just want a handy quick reference to OS X Leopard, this book helps you get to work quickly and efficiently. Each task covers a specific subject, and most steps take only a minute or two to follow. This book also provides crucial tips that you won't find in your Mac's built-in help system.

Introduction

Conventions used in this book

- When you have to access a menu command, I use the ⇐ symbol. For example, if you have to open the File menu and then choose Open, I say File⇐>Open.
- Internet addresses are presented like www.dummies.com. I leave off the http:// part of Web addresses because you usually don't have to type it anyway.



When you see this icon, the text includes helpful tips or extra information relating to the task.

How This Book Is Organized

I organized the chapters of this book into several basic parts:

Part 1: Using OS X

The Mac OS X operating system is accessible and easy to use right out of the box. But if you want to customize the way OS X looks and behaves, the chapters in this part show you how. Chapters also show you how to manage system preferences and work with files and folders, which is especially helpful if you're new to Macs.

Part 11: Getting to Work in OS X

Macs aren't all about iPods and movies. This part shows you how to use some of the handy programs that are included with OS X, as well as how to use productivity programs, such as word processors and presentation programs. I show you how to use and customize the OS X *Dashboard*, an innovative tool that gives you instant access to notepads, calculators, weather updates, sports scores, and more. And I show you how to clean up desktop clutter with Spaces, a new feature in OS X Leopard.

Part 111: Going Online with Your Mac

If you're like most people, the Internet is one of the main reasons you use a computer in the first place. In this part, I show you how to browse the Web, exchange e-mail, chat, and even create your own blogs and Web pages.

Part IV: Using Multimedia

A modern Mac running OS X Leopard is one of the most powerful multimedia devices you can buy. With iLife programs that come free with most new Macs, you can watch DVDs, manage and play your music library, send music to iPods and other MP3 players, organize and improve digital photos, and make your own movies.

Part V: Networking Your Mac

If you have more than one computer, you'll probably want to connect those computers together at some point so that they can share files, printers, Internet connections, and other resources. This part shows you how to set up networks between all your computers, even if some of those computers are Windows PCs.

Part VI: Extending Your Mac's Capabilities

As powerful and versatile as most Macs are, they can be even more. In this part, I show you how to use Bluetooth peripherals with your Mac, how to network with computers running older versions of the Macintosh operating system, and how to upgrade your Mac. One chapter even shows you how to install the Microsoft Windows operating system on your Mac, a new capability with Intelchipped Macs running OS X Leopard.

Get Ready To

If you're ready to fire up your first Mac, or you're a longtime user and need quick steps to access advanced features, there's a task in this book that's ready to help you.

<u>Part 1</u> Using OS X



Chapter	1: Customizing	OS X		5
---------	----------------	------	--	---

Access System Preferences	6
Modify the Desktop Appearance	6
Change the Display Size	
Customize Keyboard Shortcuts	9
Add and Remove Dock Items	
Move and Hide the Dock	11
Make OS X Accessible	12
Activate a Screen Saver	14
Display 24-Hour Time	15
Access Programs Quickly with Exposé	16
Set up Spaces	
Switch between Spaces	18

Chapter 2: Creating and Managing User Accounts ...19

Disable Automatic Login	20
Require a Password to Wake the Computer	
Create a New User Account	21
Change Account Settings	22
Change a Password	
Switch between User Accounts	
Set Up Parental Controls	
Delete a User Account	26

Chapter 3: Managing Files and Folders	27
Search Your Computer with Spotlight	
Associate Files with Different Programs	
Change a File's Icon	30
Customize the Finder	31
Create Folders	32
Rename Groups of Files	
Trash Files or Folders	
Back Up Files to a CD	
Back Up Your Computer with Time Machin	
Restore Files with Time Machine	
Summan Dediton Leone for CDs and Doda	20
Suppress Desktop Icons for CDs and iPods	
Chapter 4: Adjusting System Preferences	
Chapter 4: Adjusting System Preferences	39
** *	39
Chapter 4: Adjusting System Preferences	
Chapter 4: Adjusting System Preferences Save Energy with Power Settings Update System Software	
Chapter 4: Adjusting System Preferences Save Energy with Power Settings Update System Software Select a Startup Disk	
Chapter 4: Adjusting System Preferences Save Energy with Power Settings Update System Software Select a Startup Disk Manage Printers Calibrate the Display Color Change Keyboard and Mouse Settings	
Chapter 4: Adjusting System Preferences Save Energy with Power Settings Update System Software Select a Startup Disk Manage Printers Calibrate the Display Color	
Chapter 4: Adjusting System Preferences Save Energy with Power Settings Update System Software Select a Startup Disk Manage Printers Calibrate the Display Color Change Keyboard and Mouse Settings Adjust Audio Settings Checking System Specifications	
Chapter 4: Adjusting System Preferences Save Energy with Power Settings Update System Software Select a Startup Disk Manage Printers Calibrate the Display Color Change Keyboard and Mouse Settings Adjust Audio Settings	

Customizing OS X

A pple is rightfully proud of the user interface design incorporated into the Macintosh OS X family of operating systems. The interface is easy to use, and it's also easy to customize so that your Mac looks and behaves the way you want.

This chapter shows you how to customize various parts of the OS X interface, including

- **Desktop:** You can change the color scheme of your desktop or use a picture as your background.
- ➡ Display: You can also change the size of the desktop display, use a custom screen saver, and adjust the way the clock appears.
- Dock: The OS X Dock normally resides at the bottom of the screen and gives quick access to your most commonly used programs. You can move the Dock, add or remove items, and change the way the Dock appears.
- Keyboard and Accessibility: Mac OS X can accommodate most accessibility needs, and common keyboard shortcuts can be changed, too.
- **Exposé:** Switch quickly between programs with this OS X tool.
- Spaces: If you're tired of constantly re-arranging your desktop, create and easily move between multiple virtual workspaces using Leopard's new Spaces feature.

Chapter

Get ready to . . .

Access System Preferences6
Modify the Desktop Appearance6
🗝 Customize Keyboard Shortcuts9
Hand Remove Dock Items10
Move and Hide the Dock11
→ Make OS X Accessible12
➡ Activate a Screen Saver14
Display 24-Hour Time15
➡ Set up Spaces17

Access System Preferences

- **1.** Open the Apple menu by clicking the Apple icon in the upper-left corner of the screen.
- **2.** Choose System Preferences from the Apple menu to reveal the System Preferences screen, as shown in Figure 1-1.



You can also open System Preferences from the Dock.

3. Click a preference icon to open a group of settings.



To return to the main System Preferences window, click the Show All button at the top of any individual settings screen.

Modify the Desktop Appearance

- **1.** Open System Preferences and then click the Appearance icon.
- **2.** Click the Appearance menu and then choose a color scheme for the overall appearance of the interface (see Figure 1-2).
- **3.** Click the Highlight Color menu and choose a highlight color for selected text.
- **4.** Use the Place Scroll Arrows radio buttons to choose whether you want scroll arrows right next to each other or placed at the top and bottom of scroll bars.
- 5. Select other scroll bar options as desired.



If you find that your computer freezes momentarily or responds slowly when scrolling through documents, deselect the Use Smooth Scrolling option.

000			System	Preferences			
• •	Show All					Q	
Personal							
E New		an Tang		3		Q	
Appearance	Desktop & Screen Saver	Dock	Exposé & Spaces	International	Security	Spotlight	
Hardware							
8	0		\bigcirc	9			
Bluetooth	CDs & DVDs	Displays	Energy Saver	Keyboard & Mouse	Print & Fax	Sound	
Internet &	Network						
		0	a				
.Mac	Network	QuickTime	Sharing				
System							
11	Chill	×	()	٥	2	0	
Accounts	Date & Time	Parental Controls	Software Update	Speech	Startup Disk	Time Machine	Universal Access

Figure 1-1: Start with the System Preferences window to change OS X settings.

000	Appearance	
Show All	Q	
Appearan Highlight Co	Graphite uttons, menus and windows	
	For selected text	
Place scroll arro	ows: 🖲 Together 🔘 At top and bottom	
Click in the scroll bar	r to: ③ Jump to the next page 〇 Jump to here	
	Use smooth scrolling	
	Minimize when double clicking a window title bar	
Number of Recent Ite		
	10 Documents 10 Servers	
Font smoothing st	tyle: Automatic - best for main display	
Turn off text smoo	othing for font sizes 4 🛊 and smaller.	?

Figure 1-2: Change the color and other appearance settings.

- *6.* Choose the maximum number of items that are displayed in Recent Items menus for Applications, Documents, and Servers.
- **7.** Click Show All to return to the main System Preferences screen.
- 8. Click the Desktop & Screen Saver icon.
- *9.* In the Desktop & Screen Saver settings window that appears, click the Desktop button to bring Desktop settings to the front (see Figure 1-3), if they aren't shown already.
- *10.* Click an image folder on the left side of the settings window and then choose a picture or swatch on the right to use as your desktop background. Choices include
 - Apple Images: These are standard background graphics supplied with OS X.
 - Themed images: OS X also includes stock photos of nature scenes, plants, and other things, which can be used as desktop backgrounds.
 - **Solid Colors:** Choose a color swatch to make your desktop background a solid color.
 - **Pictures Folder:** Click this to use any image from your Pictures folder, as shown in Figure 1-4.
- *11.* Using the menu at the top of the Desktop window, choose whether you want to tile smaller images or stretch them to fill the whole screen.



Enable the Change Picture check box at the bottom of the screen to automatically change the background image periodically. By using this feature, you can turn your desktop into a slide show.

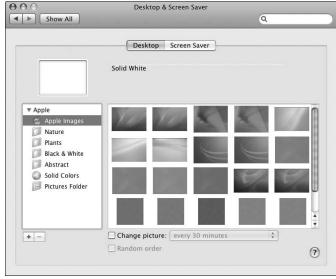


Figure 1-3: Click the Desktop button to bring desktop settings to the front.



Figure 1-4: You can use almost any picture as your desktop background.

7

Change the Display Size

- **1.** Open System Preferences and then click the Displays icon.
- **2.** In the Displays screen that appears, click the Display button to bring Display settings to the front, if they aren't shown already.
- **3.** Choose a resolution on the left side of the screen, as shown in Figure 1-5.
- 4. Use the Brightness slider to adjust the display brightness.
- **5.** Choose a Colors setting and a Refresh Rate in each respective menu.



In general, you should use the highest available settings in the Colors and Refresh Rate menus. Reduce them only if you see distortion or other display problems.



If you connect a second display to your computer — for example, an external monitor or a multimedia projector — open the Displays settings and then click the Detect Displays button. OS X detects the new display and allows you to adjust its settings as well.

- *6.* Click the Color button to bring the Color settings to the front, as shown in Figure 1-6.
- 7. Choose a Display Profile on the left side of the screen.



Which Display Profile you use depends primarily on your hardware. See Chapter 4 for more on choosing display profiles.

0	A90f+	
Show All	and the second second	٩
	Display Color	
Resolutions:		
640 x 480	Colors:	Millions
800 x 600		(
832 x 624	Refresh Rate:	85 Hertz
1024 x 768	1	Detect Displays
1152 x 864		Detect Displays
1152 x 870		
1280 x 768	U	
1280 x 960	Rotate:	Standard 🗘
1280 x 1024	X	2 24 /0 /02
1344 x 1008	Show displa	ys in menu bar 🛛 🤶

Figure 1-5: Change the display resolution and brightness here.

Show All	A90f+	Q
		4
	Display Color	
Display Profile:		
A90f+		Show profiles for this display only
		Open Profile
		Delete Profile
		(Calibrate)
		(?)

Figure 1-6: Choose a color profile for your display.

Customize Keyboard Shortcuts

- *1.* Quit any open applications by using **#**+Q.
- **2.** Open System Preferences and then click the Keyboard & Mouse icon to open the Keyboard & Mouse settings, as shown in Figure 1-7.
- **3.** Click the Keyboard Shortcuts button to bring Keyboard Shortcut settings to the front, as shown in Figure 1-8.
- **4.** Scroll down the list of available commands to find the one you want to customize.
- **5.** Double-click the shortcut you want to change. Make sure you double-click the actual shortcut listed in the Shortcut column, not the command listed in the Description column.
- *6.* Press the new keyboard shortcut that you want to use for the command.



If the shortcut you want to use is assigned already to a different command, a yellow warning triangle appears next to the duplicated shortcuts. If you see the yellow warning triangles, at least one shortcut must be changed.

- **7.** To disable a keyboard shortcut, remove the check mark next to it in the On column.
- **8.** Close the Keyboard & Mouse preferences window to save your changes.



If you're unhappy with the keyboard shortcuts you've customized or if you're using a pre-owned computer that was customized by someone else, open the Keyboard Shortcuts settings and click the Restore Defaults button. This restores all keyboard shortcuts back to their factory defaults.

000	Keyboard & Mouse	
▲ ► She	ow All	٩
	Keyboard Mouse Bluetooth K	eyboard Shortcuts
	Key Repeat Rate	Delay Until Repeat
	Slow Fast Off	f Long Short
	300 100 100	Long Short
	Modifier Keys	
	Change Keyboard Type	e)
		0
		(?)

Figure 1-7: Adjust basic keyboard settings here.

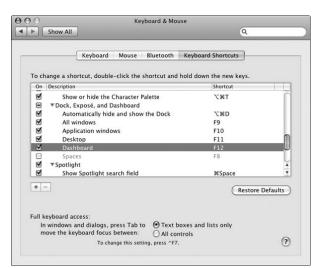


Figure 1-8: Keyboard shortcuts are customized easily.

Add and Remove Dock Items

- 1. Open the icon for your hard drive and then click Applications in the sidebar on the left side of the Finder window to open the Applications folder, as shown in Figure 1-9.
- **2.** Locate the icon for the program that you want to add to the Dock.



In some cases — such as Apple iWork or Microsoft Office applications — you may need to open a subfolder to find a program's icon. Look closely at the icon; if the icon looks like a folder, it is a folder.

- **3.** Click and drag the program's icon to the Dock, as shown in Figure 1-9. The place where you drop the icon on the Dock will be that icon's location, so choose a location carefully.
- **4.** To launch an application from the Dock, simply click the appropriate icon. The application launches.
- **5.** To remove an item from the Dock, click-and-hold the mouse pointer on the item until a pop-up menu appears, as shown in Figure 1-10.



10

If you're using a two-button mouse, simply right-click the Dock icon you want to remove instead of clicking-and-holding.

6. While still holding down the mouse button, move the pointer over Remove from Dock and then release the mouse button. The item disappears from the Dock.



Figure 1-9: Click and drag application icons to the Dock.



Figure 1-10: Items can be removed from the Dock as easily as they are added.

Move and Hide the Dock

- 1. Open System Preferences and then click the Dock icon.
- **2.** In the Dock settings screen, as shown in Figure 1-11, move the Dock Size slider to change the Dock size.



You can also change the Dock size at any time by clicking and dragging up or down on the thin vertical line near the right side of the Dock.

- **3.** If you want to use Dock magnification useful if you have the Dock size set to small and it holds many icons place a check mark next to Magnification and adjust the slider as desired.
- **4.** Choose a Dock position by clicking the Left, Bottom, or Right radio buttons. Figure 1-12 shows the Dock on the left side of the screen.



If you have a widescreen monitor, you may find that putting the Dock on the left or right side of the screen makes more efficient use of screen real estate.

- **5.** If you don't like the bouncy feedback provided by Dock icons when you launch a program, remove the check mark next to Animate Opening Applications. An arrow still shows you when the program is launching.
- *6.* To automatically hide the Dock when it isn't in use, place a check mark next to Automatically Hide and Show the Dock. To reveal the hidden Dock, simply move the mouse pointer to the bottom (or left or right, as appropriate) of the screen.

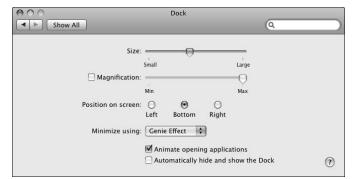


Figure 1-11: You can customize many aspects of the Dock.

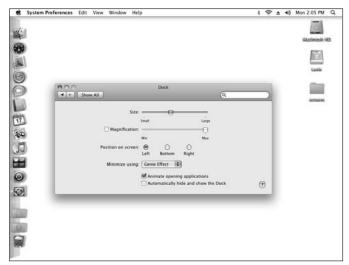


Figure 1-12: If you have a widescreen monitor, you may want to move your Dock to the side.



Make OS X Accessible

- **1.** Open System Preferences and then click the Universal Access icon.
- **2.** To adjust settings for visual impairments, click the Seeing tab to reveal the Seeing settings, as shown in Figure 1-13.
- **3.** To enable *VoiceOver* a basic screen reader program built-in to OS X select the On radio button below VoiceOver.



If you aren't happy with how VoiceOver sounds, click the Open VoiceOver Utility button. There you can change the voice, pitch, speed, and other characteristics of VoiceOver.

- 4. To enable screen zooming, select the On radio button below Zoom. Press Option+ℜ+= to zoom in on an area of the screen, and press Option+ℜ+- to zoom back out.
- *5.* Use the settings below Display to change the appearance and use of color onscreen.
- **6.** Click the Hearing button to reveal audio options, as shown in Figure 1-14.
- **7.** If you can't hear alert sounds from the computer, place a check mark next to Flash the Screen When an Alert Sound Occurs.



Click the Flash Screen button to test the screen flash.

Seei	ng Hearing Keyboard Mouse]
VoiceOver: ⊛On ○Off	Turn VoiceOver on or off: % Open Voi	F5 ceOver Utility
Zoom: ⊛On ⊖Off	Turn zoom on or off: ℃೫* Zoom in: ℃೫+ Zoom out: ℃೫-	Options
Display: Black on White White on Black Enhance contrast:	Switch to white-on-black: ^ Use grayscale	` \?#*
	Normal Maximum Reduce contrast: へて第, Increase contrast: へて第.	

Figure 1-13: Use these settings if you need help seeing your Mac.



Figure 1-14: If you can't hear audio alerts, you can enable a screen flash instead.

- **8.** Click the Keyboard button to adjust keyboard options, as shown in Figure 1-15.
- 9. To enable Sticky Keys, select the On radio button next to Sticky Keys. Sticky Keys allows you to use modifier keys, such as Shift, Function, Control, Option, and **H**, without simultaneously pressing multiple keys.



If you need Sticky Keys only occasionally, place a check mark next to Press the Shift Key Five Times to Turn Sticky Keys On or Off. This option gives you an easy way to quickly enable or disable Sticky Keys.

- *10.* To create a delay between when a key is first pressed and when it's accepted by the computer, click On next to Slow Keys. Use the Acceptance Delay slider to change the length of the delay.
- 11. Click Mouse & Trackpad to open pointer device settings, as shown in Figure 1-16.
- **12.** If you wish to use a numeric keypad in place of a mouse, click On next to Mouse Keys.



If your keyboard doesn't include a dedicated keypad — this is usually the case with laptops — you can purchase a USB (Universal Series Bus) keypad at most computer and office supply stores.

- *13.* Use the Initial Delay and Maximum Speed sliders to fine-tune the behavior of Mouse Keys.
- **14.** If the mouse cursor is too small, use the Cursor Size slider to change the size of the cursor. The Cursor Size slider works with Mouse Keys as well as a conventional mouse or trackpad.



If you're giving a presentation with your Mac and a digital projector, you may want to increase the size of the mouse cursor so that the cursor can be used as an onscreen pointer during the presentation.

	Cooling Hearing	Kevboard	Maura	
	Seeing Hearing	Keyboard	Mouse	
For difficulties	pressing more than one	key at a time		
	Sticky Keys: 🖲 O			
	Treats a sequence of		a key combination.	
	Press the Shift	key five times	to turn Sticky Keys on	or off
	🗹 Beep when a m	nodifier key is s	et	
	Display presse	d keys on scree	2n	
For difficulties	with initial or repeated I	keystrokes		
	Slow Keys: O On	● Off		
	Puts a delay between	when a key is pre	essed and when it is accept	ted.
	Use click key s	ounds		
	Acceptance Delay	:		-
		Long	- Y - 1	Short
	delay can be set or turned of			
Key repeat	delay can be set or turned or	i ili keyboaro prei	erences. Jer key kepean	

Figure 1-15: Change the way your keyboard behaves here.

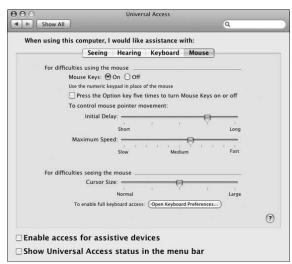


Figure 1-16: Your pointing device can be customized, too.

Activate a Screen Saver

- **1.** Open System Preferences and then click the Desktop & Screen Saver icon.
- **2.** Click the Screen Saver button to reveal screen saver settings, as shown in Figure 1-17.
- **3.** Scroll through the list of screen savers and click a screen saver to preview it in the window to the right.



To create a screen saver with photos from your iPhoto library, choose Library in the Screen Savers list. Alternatively, scroll down the Screen Savers list and click Choose Folder and then browse to a folder containing pictures you want to use.

- **4.** Use the Start Screen Saver slider to change when the screen saver appears. If you choose 15, for example, the screen saver appears only after the computer is inactive for 15 minutes.
- *5.* To configure a hot corner for activating your screen saver, click the Hot Corners button.
- **6.** Decide which corner you want as the hot corner and then choose Start Screen Saver in that corner's menu, as shown in Figure 1-18.
- **7.** Click OK to close the hot corner options. To test the hot corner, move the mouse pointer all the way to the corner you selected. The screen saver begins.



If you don't want to use a screen saver, move the Start Screen Saver slider to Never.

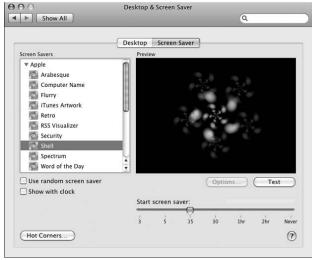


Figure 1-17: OS X comes with some neat built-in screen savers.

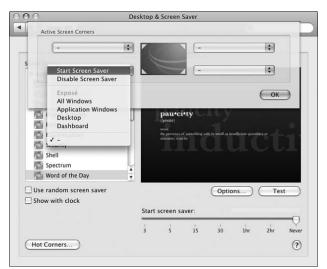


Figure 1-18: Hot corners can be used to quickly activate a screen saver.

Display 24-Hour Time

1. Open System Preferences and then click the Date & Time icon.



You can also open the Date & Time control panel by clicking-andholding the clock in the upper-right corner of the screen and then choosing Open Date & Time from the contextual menu that appears.

- **2.** Click the Clock button to bring Clock preferences to the front, as shown in Figure 1-19.
- **3.** Select Use a 24-Hour Clock to display time in 24-hour format.



If you're displaying time in 24-hour format, it makes sense to deselect the Show AM/PM option.

4. Adjust other clock options as desired and then click the Date & Time button to show the calendar and time setting options, as shown in Figure 1-20.



Some clock options — such as Analog display — aren't compatible with a 24-hour clock.

5. If you want the computer to automatically synchronize its clock with an online date and time source, make sure that Set Date & Time Automatically is checked. Choose a source based on your geographical location.

0	Date & Time	
► Show All		9
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
	Date & Time Time Zone (Clock
Show date ar	nd time in menu bar	
	View as: 🖲 Digital 🛛 Analog	
	Display the time with	seconds
	Show AM/PM	
	Show the day of the w	
	Flash the time separat	tors
	🗹 Use a 24-hour clock	
Announce th	e time: On the hour 🗘 Cus	stomize Voice)
		(?)
		0
n		
Click the lock to	prevent further changes.	

Figure 1-19: Customize the way time is displayed on your computer.

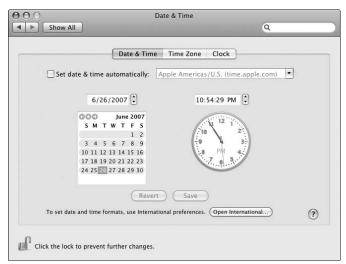


Figure 1-20: Your computer can automatically check and set the time for you.

Access Programs Quickly with Exposé

- **1.** Open System Preferences and then click the Exposé & Spaces button.
- **2.** Select a hot corner that you want to use for switching between open programs and then choose All Windows in that corner's menu, as shown in Figure 1-21.
- 3. Close the Exposé & Spaces window.
- **4.** Move the mouse pointer to the corner you selected as the Exposé hot corner. A window for each active program appears, as shown in Figure 1-22.
- *5.* Click the program window you want to open. The selected program becomes active although those other programs are still running.



16

You can also quickly switch between open applications by holding down the 96 key and then pressing Tab. A small window appears in the middle of the screen with an icon for each open application. Keep pressing Tab until the desired program is highlighted and then release the 96 key.

Show All	Exposé & Spaces	٩	
			-
	Exposé Spaces	All Windows Application Windows Desktop Dashboard	ick
xposé allows you to tempor n any window to bring it to he Dashboard. You can enal	the front. You can set a Da	Start Screen Saver	
Active Screen Corners		Sleep Display	
-		✓ -	1
		-	
Start Screen Saver		-	\$
All windows: Application windows: Desktop:	F9 \$ F10 \$ F11 \$	- •	
Dashboard:	F12	- •	

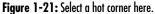




Figure 1-22: Click the program window you want to open.

17

Set up Spaces

- **1.** Open System Preferences and then click the Exposé & Spaces icon.
- **2.** Click the Spaces button to open Spaces options, as shown in Figure 1-23.
- 3. Place a check mark next to Enable Spaces.



To switch between Spaces more easily, place a check mark next to Show Spaces in Menu Bar. A Spaces number appears in the menu bar. Click the Space number and then select a new space from the menu that appears to jump to that space.

- **4.** To add spaces, click the plus sign next to either Column or Row. In Figure 1-23, one row has been added.
- **5.** If you want to use only a certain program in a certain space for example, you may set up a separate space just for the DVD player click the plus sign under Application Bindings.
- **6.** In the Finder window that appears, as shown in Figure 1-24, select an application and then click Add.
- **7.** In the Application Bindings column of the Spaces window, click the Space number and choose a space to which the application should be assigned.



You can create bindings for any application, but they're most effective for multimedia applications that might compete with each other, such as iTunes and the DVD Player. If iTunes is in Space 3, audio from iTunes goes away when you switch to the DVD Player in Space 4 and vice versa.

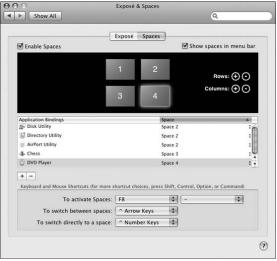


Figure 1-23: Enable and configure different spaces for your desktop.



Figure 1-24: Applications can be assigned to specific spaces.

Switch between Spaces

- **1.** To switch between spaces, use one of the following techniques:
 - Press F8 to activate spaces, as shown in Figure 1-25, and then click the space that you want to open.



18

You can change the Spaces hot key by opening the Spaces preferences window and selecting a different function key from the To Activate Spaces menu. F8 is the default hot key for spaces.

- Click the Spaces number in the menu bar (if shown) and then select a Space number from the menu that appears.
- Launch a program that has a dependency to a specific space. The previous section shows you how to set up dependencies.
- **2.** To move an application window from one space to another, activate Spaces and then click and drag a window to a new space, as shown in Figure 1-26.

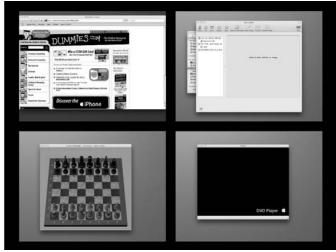


Figure 1-25: Press F8 to activate spaces and then click a space to open it.



Figure 1-26: You can click and drag application windows between Spaces.

Creating and Managing User Accounts

A fter you get a new computer, one of the first things you will probably do is customize it to fit your needs and personality. You may customize the desktop appearance, add your favorite programs to the Dock, and set up e-mail and chat programs for your personal accounts. But what if your new computer is shared by other people? They may want to do customizations of their own, and you probably don't want other people using your e-mail account.

The Macintosh operating system allows you to easily set up multiple user accounts on your computer. Personal user accounts have several advantages:

- ➡ Each user can customize the way the operating system looks and behaves without affecting other users.
- Users can set up and use their own e-mail and Internet accounts.
- Private files and communications stay private.
- User accounts can help prevent unauthorized persons from using the computer.
- Parents can control how their children spend their time on the computer.

This chapter shows you how to set up and manage user accounts on your computer.

Chapter 2

Get ready to . . .

→ Disable Automatic Login	20
Require a Password to Wake the Computer	20
🗝 Create a New User Account	21
	22
➡ Change a Password	22
➡ Switch between User Accounts	23
➡ Set Up Parental Controls	24
➡ Delete a User Account	26

Disable Automatic Login

- **1.** Open System Preferences and then click the Accounts icon.
- 2. Click Login Options.
- **3.** Click the Lock icon in the lower-left corner and then enter your administrator password to unlock changes.
- **4.** In the Automatic Login menu choose Disabled, as shown in Figure 2-1.
- *5.* Under Display Login Window As, choose one of the following options:
 - List of users: A list of users appears in the login window. Users click a name and then enter a password to login.
 - Name and password: The login window simply shows empty Name and Password fields. This option is less convenient but slightly more secure.

Require a Password to Wake the Computer

- **1.** Open System Preferences and then click the Security icon.
- **2.** Click the System button.
- **3.** Place a check mark next to Require Password to Wake This Computer from Sleep or Screen Saver; see Figure 2-2.

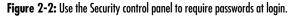


If you haven't already disabled Automatic Login, a warning message suggests that you do so if you require a password to wake the computer from sleep or a screen saver.

00	Accounts		
Show All		٩	
My Account My Account Admin Other Accounts Guest Account Disabled Login Options	Disabled Automatic log in ✓ Keith Und Display login window as:	nd Shut Down buttons window	
Click the lock to prevent	further changes.		(\mathbf{r})

Figure 2-1: Disable Automatic Login to make your computer more secure.

000	Sec	urity		
Show All			٩	
	FileVault Fir	ewall System		
Require password to wal	ke this computer fi	rom sleep or screer	n saver	
For all accounts on this con				
Require password to Log out after 60				
Use secure virtual me	mory			
Disable remote contro	ol infrared receiver	·		
This computer will work available remote.	with any	Unpair		
Click the lock to prevent fur	ther changes.			?



Create a New User Account

- **1.** Open System Preferences and then click the Accounts icon.
- **2.** Click the Lock icon in the lower-left corner of the Accounts control panel and then enter your administrator password to unlock account settings.
- **3.** Click the plus sign in the lower-left corner just above the Lock icon of the Accounts window. The new account tab appears, as shown in Figure 2-3.
- **4.** Enter a name and a short name for the account.



The short name is used for system folders. If you don't like the short name that's generated automatically, change it now because the short name can't be changed after the account is created.

5. Enter a password and a password hint for the new user.



If you're not sure whether your password is secure enough, click the key button next to the Password field to open the Password Assistant. The Assistant grades the quality of your password and suggests alternatives if necessary.

6. Choose an account type in the Account Type menu.



Administrator rights allow you to create new accounts, install programs, and change other important system settings, so choose carefully when deciding who will and will not get administrator rights on your computer. Most accounts should be Standard or Managed with Parental Controls. Sharing accounts give read-only access and should mainly be used for remote network users.

7. Click Create Account. The new account appears in the accounts list, as shown in Figure 2-4.

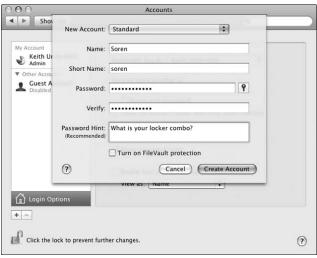


Figure 2-3: Enter a name and password for the new account.

Show All	Accounts	٩
My Account Keith Underdahl Admin Other Accounts Guest Account	Reset Password	I
Disabled Soren Standard	User Name: Soren .Mac Name:	
🔓 Login Options	Allow user to administer this compute	
+ - Click the lock to prevent	further changes.	(?

21

Figure 2-4: New accounts appear in the list on the left.

Change Account Settings

- 1. Open System Preferences and then click the Accounts icon.
- **2.** Click the Lock icon in the lower-left corner of the Accounts control panel and enter your administrator password to unlock account settings.
- *3.* Click the account name for which you want to change settings.
- 4. Adjust basic account settings, such as administrator rights.
- 5. To change the account's picture, click the Picture.
- 6. Choose a picture in the list, as shown in Figure 2-5.



If you want to use your own picture, click Edit Picture and then click Choose in the Images window that appears. Browse to the photo you want to use. If your computer has an iSight or built-in camera, you'll also be given the option to take a picture using it.

Change a Password

- 1. Open System Preferences and then click the Accounts icon.
- **2.** Click the Lock icon in the lower-left corner of the Accounts control panel and enter your administrator password to unlock account settings.
- **3.** Click the account name for which you want to change the password and then click Reset Password.
- **4.** In the Reset Password window that appears, as shown in Figure 2-6, enter a new password and a hint.
- 5. Click Reset Password to set the new password.

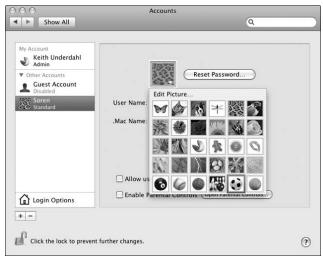


Figure 2-5: Choose an account picture here.

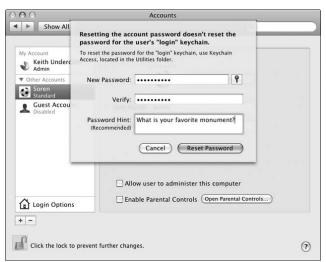


Figure 2-6: Passwords should be changed regularly.



Switch between User Accounts

- **1.** Open System Preferences and then click the Accounts icon.
- **2.** Click the Lock icon in the lower-left corner of the Accounts control panel and enter your administrator password to unlock account settings.
- 3. Click Login Options at the bottom of the accounts list.
- **4.** In the login options that appear, place a check mark next to Enable Fast User Switching, as shown in Figure 2-7.
- Choose how you want users to appear on the switching menu — Name, Short Name, or Icon Image — and then close the Accounts window.



Fast user switching makes it easier to switch between users, but it isn't necessary. Don't enable fast user switching if your computer has limited memory or you don't want to allow multiple users to log in simultaneously.

- **6.** To switch to a different user, click the user name in the upper-right corner of the menu bar.
- **7.** In the User Switching menu that appears, as shown in Figure 2-8, choose a user name to switch to that user.



If you don't enable fast user switching, you must log out of the current account before switching to a new user. Choose Apple=>Log Out to log out of the current account and then use the standard OS X login screen to log in to a different account.

000	Accounts	
Show All	٩	
My Account Keith Underdahl Amin Other Accounts Standard Levest Account Enabled	Automatic log in: Disabled : Display login window as: O List of users Name and password Show the Restart, Sleep, and Shut Down buttons Show Input menu in login window Use VoiceOver at login window Show password hints	
Login Options + - Click the lock to prevent	Enable fast user switching View as ✓ Name Short name Icon	?

Figure 2-7: Enable fast user switching in the Login Options window.



Figure 2-8: Click the user name to switch to a new user.

Set Up Parental Controls

- **1.** Open System Preferences and then click the Parental Controls icon.
- **2.** Click the Lock icon in the lower-left corner of the Parental Controls control panel and enter your administrator password to unlock the settings.
- **3.** Click the account name for which you want to set up parental controls and then click Enable Parental Controls.



You can't set up parental controls on administrator accounts.

- **4.** To control what applications the user can access, click System and then check or uncheck applications, as shown in Figure 2-9.
- **5.** Place check marks next to system features that the user is allowed to use. In Figure 2-9, the user isn't allowed to burn CDs and DVDs or modify the Dock.
- *6.* To limit who the person can correspond with by e-mail or iChat, click Mail & iChat and then place a check mark next to the services you want to limit.
- **7.** In the e-mail address list, click the Add button (it looks like a plus sign) and then type the name and e-mail address that you want to allow.
- **8.** Click Add to add the user to the list of allowable iChat or Mail partners, as shown in Figure 2-10.



Figure 2-9: Select which applications your child can use.



Figure 2-10: Use this window to control with whom your child exchanges e-mail.

- *9.* To limit your child's access to adult Web sites or offensive content, click Content.
- *10.* Place a check mark next to Hide Profanity in the Dictionary to block access to offensive words in the OS X Dictionary program.
- 11. Choose an option for limiting Web sites:
 - Allow Unrestricted Access to Websites: This option places no limits on Web site access.
 - Try to Limit Access to Adult Website Automatically: Safari attempts to identify and limit access to adult Web sites. This works most but not all the time.
 - Allow Access to Only These Websites: This reveals a list of Web sites, as shown in Figure 2-11. The user can visit only sites in this list. Click the plus sign under the list to add more Web sites.
- **12.** To manage the amount of time your child spends on the computer, click Time Limits.
- *13.* Place check marks next to Limit Computer Use To under Weekdays and Weekends and then use the sliders to set the maximum time, as shown in Figure 2-12.
- 14. Under Bedtime, place check marks next to School Nights and Weekends and then use the clock menus to set a bedtime for computer use.



Figure 2-11: Limit access to offensive Web sites and other material.

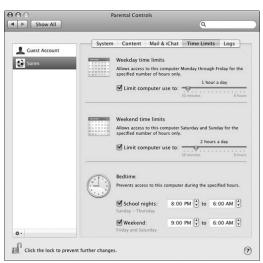


Figure 2-12: Control when and for how long your child uses the computer.



Delete a User Account

1. Back up any important files and data that may be stored in the user's personal folders.



To back up the user's files, you will either need to log in to the computer as that user or use your administrator password to access the account.

- **2.** Open System Preferences and then click the Accounts icon.
- **3.** Click the Lock icon in the lower-left corner of the Accounts control panel and enter your administrator password to unlock account settings.
- 4. Click the user account name that you want to remove.
- *5.* Click the Delete User button, which is located under the accounts list and looks like a minus sign.
- **6.** Confirm that you actually want to delete the account, as shown in Figure 2-13.



If you click OK, the user's files are retained. If you click Delete Immediately, all the user's files and settings are deleted immediately.

000	Accounts	
	Are you sure you want to delete the user account "Soren"?	_
My Accour	To delete this user account, select what you want to do with the home folder for this account and then click OK.	
▼ Other A ● Gue	O Save the home folder in a disk image The disk image is saved in the Deleted Users folder (in the Users folder).	
Enab Sore Mana	O Do not change the home folder The home folder remains in the Users folder.	
	Delete the home folder (Cancel) OK	
	Allow user to administer this computer	
Login Options	☑ Enable Parental Controls (Open Parental Controls)	
+ -		
Click the lock to pre	vent further changes.	?

Figure 2-13: Confirm whether you want to delete the account.

Managing Files and Folders

Consider all the things for which you use your computer. You compose e-mail, browse the Internet, edit photos, play music, type memos, and more. Many of these tasks involve files that are stored on your hard drive.

The Macintosh operating system makes managing your files easy. The Mac OS X component that helps you browse and manage files is the *Finder*. The Finder runs at all times in the background, and you can open Finder windows from the Dock or any time you double-click the icon for a hard drive or folder. The Finder lets you quickly perform basic tasks, like creating folders and moving or deleting files. The Finder also lets you perform more advanced tasks, such as customizing a file's icon or changing the default program you use to open a file.

This chapter shows you how to manage files with the Finder. It also shows you how to use other OS X file management tools, including

- **Spotlight:** This is a powerful tool for searching files, programs, and even system settings.
- **Trash:** Deleted files are sent to the Trash. If you accidentally delete a needed file, you can usually recover it from the Trash.
- **Burn Folders:** Back up important files to recordable CDs or DVDs by using Burn folders.
- ➡ Time Machine: New in Leopard, Time Machine makes it easy to back up your entire computer on a regular basis.

Chapter

Get ready to . . .

Search Your Computer with Spotlight	28
Associate Files with Different Programs	29
➡ Change a File's Icon	30
	31
···→ Create Folders	32
Rename Groups of Files	32
➡ Trash Files or Folders	34
➡ Back Up Files to a CD	35
Here Wack Up Your Computer with Time Machine	36
Restore Files with Time Machine	37
Suppress Desktop Icons for CDs and iPods	38

Search Your Computer with Spotlight

- **1.** Click the Spotlight icon in the upper-right corner of the OS X menu bar. The Spotlight icon looks like a magnifying glass.
- **2.** Type a query. When you type, top results appear in a menu below Spotlight. Choose a result in the menu to open it.
- **3.** To view a more detailed list of results, click Show All in the Spotlight menu to open the Spotlight window, as shown in Figure 3-1.



To search a specific location (such as an external hard drive or your Pictures folder), select the location in the sidebar on the left side of the Spotlight window.

4. If Spotlight searches resources that you prefer not to search, open System Preferences and click the Spotlight icon.



28

You can also open Spotlight Preferences by choosing Spotlight Preferences in the Spotlight menu.

- *5.* In the Spotlight Preferences window, remove check marks next to resources that you don't want searched.
- *6.* To block certain folders from being searched, click the Privacy button near the top of the Spotlight window.
- **7.** Click Add (it looks like a plus sign) near the bottom of the Privacy window and then browse to the folder you want to block from being searched.
- **8.** Select the folder and click Choose. The blocked folder appears in the list, as shown in Figure 3-2.



Figure 3-1: Use Spotlight to quickly search for files and other items.

000	Spotligh	t	
	how All	(<u>ما</u>
0	Spotlight helps you quickly find things o at the top right corner of the screen. Search Results Prevent Spotlight from searching these lo	Privacy cations:	t is located
	Click the Add button, or drag a folder or disk in AR-screens	to the list below.	
	AR-screens		
	+ -		
	Spotlight menu keyboard shortcut:	¥ Space ▼	
	Spotlight window keyboard shortcut:	℃# Space ▼	

Figure 3-2: You can block Spotlight from searching certain folders.

Associate Files with Different Programs

- **1.** Open Finder and browse to a file for which you want to change the program association.
- **2.** Click the file once to select it but don't double-click the file or open it.
- **3.** With the file selected, press **ૠ**+I.



You can also open the Info window by selecting the file and then choosing File=>Get Info, or right-clicking the file and choosing Get Info from the menu that appears.

- **4.** In the Info window, as shown in Figure 3-3, click the arrow next to Open With to expand the file opening options.
- *5.* Click the menu under Open With and choose a different program.



If you don't see the desired program listed in the menu, choose Other from the bottom of the menu and then browse the Applications folder to find the program you want to use to open the file.



Make sure you select a program that is appropriate for opening the file. For example, if the file is a picture, you probably want to associate it with a graphics program like iPhoto or Adobe Photoshop. A word processing program, like Apple Pages, isn't the best program to open and edit photos in.

- *6.* If you want to change the program association for all files of a given type, click Change All below the Open With menu.
- **7.** Click Continue in the dialog box shown in Figure 3-4 to apply the global change.



Figure 3-3: Use the Open With menu to change a file's program association.



Figure 3-4: You can make global program associations, too.



Change a File's Icon

1. Open an image file containing the image you want to use as a file's icon.



Ideally, the icon image should have some relevance to the document. For example, if the document is a PDF file containing information about your company, you may want to change the file's icon so that it uses your company logo.

- Select the image and then copy it. If you're viewing the image in the OS X Preview program, simply choose Edit⇔Copy, as shown in Figure 3-5.
- 3. Close the image.
- **4.** Open Finder and browse to a file for which you want to change the program association.
- *5.* Click the file once to select it but don't double-click the file or open it.
- *6*. With the file selected, press **ૠ**+I.
- **7.** Click once on the current icon image in the upper-left corner of the Info window to select it.
- 8. With the old icon selected (a border appears around the icon when it is selected), as shown in Figure 3-6, press %+V to paste in the new icon image.
- *9.* Close the Info window. As you can see in Figure 3-6, the new icon image appears immediately in the Finder.



You can follow these same steps to change a folder's icon as well as a file's icon.



Figure 3-5: Copy the image that you want to use as your new file icon.

000		Pictures	e
< ►		> * -	Q
DEVICES Disk Netwo Macin	O M Strawberry Century Info Strawberry Century 41.6 MB Modified: Jun 25, 2007 9:56 PM	buenavista0607	covered-bridges
T SHARED	▼ Spotlight Comments:		JPEG
♥ PLACES	© General: Kind: Folder Size: 41.6 MB on disk (43,564,284 bytes) for 25 items Where: (/user/skeithunderdahi/Pictures Created: Monday, June 25, 2007 9:56 PM Modified: Monday, June 25, 2007 9:56 PM	Strawberry Century	041507_03.jpg
Movie	Label: X Shared Folder Docked More Info:	020307_04.jpg	020307_26.jpg
 Today Yester 	Time Machine: Name & Extension: Preview: Sharing & Permissions:	IMGP1190.JPG	IMGP1188.JPG
All Ima	iges 👘		

Figure 3-6: To change a file's icon, simply paste in a new image.

Customize the Finder

- **1.** Click the Finder button on the Dock to open a Finder window.
- **2.** Click the options button (it looks like a toothed gear) and choose Show View Options.



Make sure that no folder or file in the Finder is selected. If an item is selected, the Options menu lists commands specific to that item, and the Show View Options choice isn't available.

- **3.** In the view options window that appears, customize appearance settings, such as icon sizes and labeling.
- **4.** Close the view options window, and with the focus still on the Finder, choose Finder=>Preferences.
- **5.** Click Sidebar at the top of the Preferences window that appears and then remove check marks next to items that you don't want to appear in the Finder Sidebar, as shown in Figure 3-7. For example, if you don't use Apple's .Mac service, you may want to remove the check next to iDisk so it doesn't needlessly take up Finder space.
- **6.** Close the Sidebar preferences and then with the focus still on the Finder, choose View=>Customize Toolbar.
- 7. In the Toolbar Customization window that appears, as shown in Figure 3-8, click and drag buttons to the Finder toolbar. In Figure 3-8, I added the Separator, New Folder, Path, and Get Info buttons to the toolbar. Click Done after you're finished making changes.



To remove items from the toolbar, simply click and drag them from the toolbar to the Tool Customization window. You can easily add them back later if you want.



Figure 3-7: Customize Finder sidebar items here.



Figure 3-8: You can easily add and remove Finder toolbar items.

Create Folders

- 1. Open the folder in which you want to create a subfolder. If you want to create a new folder on the Desktop, click in an empty area of the Desktop to ensure it has the current focus.
- **2.** Press **#**+Shift+N to create a new folder. As you can see in Figure 3-9, the new folder is named Untitled Folder.
- 3. Type a new descriptive name for your folder.



To keep your files secure, you should create subfolders only on the Desktop or in your user-specific folders in the Finder. User-specific folders in the Finder include Documents, Movies, Music, and Pictures. Each folder is represented by a link in the Finder Sidebar, so they're easy to find.

Rename Groups of Files

- 1. Make sure all the files you want to rename are together in a single folder. The folder should contain only the files you want to rename.
- 2. Open the Finder and then open the Applications folder.
- **3.** In the Applications folder, open the AppleScript folder, open the Example Scripts folder, and then open the Finder Scripts folder. A list of Finder scripts appears, as shown in Figure 3-10.
- **4.** To trim text from file names, double-click Trim File Names.scpt. The Script Editor launches.



Figure 3-9: Use folders and subfolders to organize your files.



OS X comes with many handy scripts to help you automate various tasks. Poke around the AppleScript folder to find others that may be useful to you, but read the instructions for each script carefully to make sure you don't cause some damage.

000	E	Finder Scripts	
		• * •	٩
VEVICES ① IDIsk ④ Network ④ Network Macintosh HD Lacie ▲ Lacie ▲ Applications ① Documents ④ Movies ④ Movies ④ Music ④ Pictures	About Finder Scriptsscpt	Add to File Names.scpt	Add to Folder Names.scpt
O Downloads 🔻		ems, 60.5 GB available	

Figure 3-10: Several Finder scripts help you rename groups of files.

5. Open the folder containing the files you want to modify.



Make sure that the folder containing the files you want to rename is in front of all other windows. The front-most window is the one to which the script is applied. If no folder window is open, the script renames files on the Desktop.

- *6.* Click the Run button in the Script Editor window.
- **7.** Enter the text string you want to trim from the file names, as shown in Figure 3-11.
- **8.** If the text string is to be removed from the beginning of each file name, click Trim Start. Click Trim End if you want to trim the end of each file name.
- 9. To add text to the file names, open the Add to File Names.scpt script.
- *10.* Confirm that the folder containing the files you want to rename is in front of all other windows.
- 11. Click Run in the Script Editor window.
- **12.** Type the text string you want to add to the file names, as shown in Figure 3-12.
- *13.* To add the string to the beginning of each file name, click Prefix. To add the string to the end, click Suffix.
- 14. After you're done running scripts and renaming files, click the Script Editor window and then press #+Q to quit the Script Editor and ensure that scripts are not inadvertently run later.



If you're renaming files for use on a Web site, use the underscore character instead of spaces in the names. Also, remember that file names on the Internet are usually case sensitive.

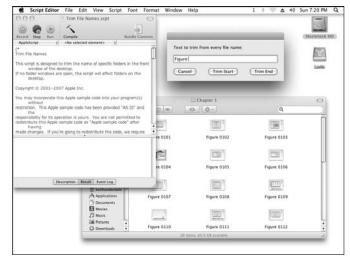


Figure 3-11: Enter the text string you want to remove from the file names.



Figure 3-12: Use the Add to File Names script to add text to file names.

Trash Files or Folders

- 1. Locate a file or folder that you want to delete.
- 2. Click and drag the file to the Trash icon on the Dock.



If you have a two-button mouse, you can also right-click a file and choose Move to Trash from the contextual menu that appears.



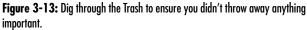
You can immediately undo an accidental trashing by pressing 9€+Z or choosing Edit=>Undo.

- **3.** To see what's in the Trash, click the Trash icon on the Dock. A Finder window displaying the contents of the Trash appears, as shown in Figure 3-13.
- **4.** If you want to restore an item from the Trash, click and drag the item to a new, safe location.
- 5. To empty the Trash, press \#+Shift+Delete or choose Findert⇒Empty Trash. You can empty the Trash only when the focus is on the Finder. If the focus is on another application, the \#+Shift+Delete command won't work.
- **6.** When you see the confirmation warning, as shown in Figure 3-14, click OK. Items in the Trash are deleted permanently.



If you're tired of always confirming yes, you actually do want to empty the Trash, open a Finder window and choose Finder=>Preferences. Click Advanced in the Preferences window that appears and then remove the check mark next to Show Warning before Emptying the Trash.





1.	Are you sure you want to remove the items in the Trash permanently?
7	You cannot undo this action.

Figure 3-14: Careful! Emptying the Trash can't be undone.

Back Up Files to a CD

- In the Finder or simply on the Desktop (the menu bar at the top of the screen must say Finder), choose Filet>New Burn Folder.
- **2.** Type a name for the Burn folder. The name will be the disc volume name when the disc is recorded.
- 3. Click and drag files and folders to the Burn folder.
- **4.** To review the items in the Burn folder, double-click the folder to open it.
- **5.** To find out how much space will be required to store the files in the Burn folder, click the Calculate Burn Folder Space button at the bottom of the Burn Folder window. The space required appears at the bottom of the Burn Folder window, as shown in Figure 3-15.



The Calculate Burn Folder Space button is round and is located in the lower-right corner of the Burn Folder window. Remember, most CDs can hold 700MB of data and most DVDs hold up to 4.3GB of data. To burn DVDs, your computer must have a SuperDrive or external DVD burner.

- *6.* After you're done adding files, click Burn in the Burn Folder window.
- **7.** When you're prompted to do so, insert a blank recordable disc of the appropriate size.
- **8.** Choose a burn speed, as shown in Figure 3-16, and then click Burn.



Recording errors are less likely to occur at slower burn speeds. Unless you're in a hurry, choose the slowest burn speed possible.



Figure 3-15: Calculate the space required for your burn.



Figure 3-16: Slower burn speeds are more reliable.

Back Up Your Computer with Time Machine

1. If you have an external hard drive, connect it to your computer and prepare it for use, as I describe in Chapter 23.



An external drive isn't required for using Time Machine, but files that are backed up to an external drive will be safer in case a component inside your computer fails.

- **2.** Open System Preferences and then click the Time Machine icon.
- 3. Next to Back Up To, click Configure.
- **4.** Select a drive to which you want backups to be saved, as shown in Figure 3-17.



If storage space is a major concern, place a check mark next to Automatically Delete Backups Older Than and then select a time frame. Shorter time frames use less disk space.

- *5.* Click OK to return to the main Time Machine control panel.
- 6. If you have a folder containing large files that don't need to be backed up, click the Add button (it looks like a plus sign) under Do Not Back Up and then browse to the desired folder. In Figure 3-18, two items will not be backed up by Time Machine.
- **7.** To start a backup immediately, click Back Up Now and then close the Time Machine control panel. Backups occur silently and don't interfere with your other work.

	Choose a backup volume:	Jre
0	Lacie Free 168.1 GB Used 64.6 GB Capacity 232.8 GB	6 GB
	Encrypt backup data	
Tim		
	Automatically delete backups older than 2 weeks	* ad: 0 KB
3	Hourly backups are saved for at least 12 hours, and then they are saved daily for as long as possible. If there is not enough disk space, further action will be needed.	
	(Cancel) OK	>w
Click	Cancel	2 .

Figure 3-17: Select a volume to which backups are saved.

000	Time Machine	
Show All	and the second second	٩
	Back up to: 🔝 Lacie Do not back up:	Configure
	🕅 Lacie	64.6 GB
	Downloads	0 KB
Time Machine		
Last Backup: 3/6/07 2:00 AM	+-	Total Included: 0 KB
	☐ Skip system files ☑ Back up automatically	Back Up Now
Click the lock to prevent furth	er changes.	(?)

Figure 3-18: You can pick and choose what's backed up by Time Machine.

Restore Files with Time Machine

- 1. Click the Time Machine icon on the Dock.
- **2.** In the Time Machine window that appears, as shown in Figure 3-19, click the arrows in the lower-right corner of the screen to move to earlier backups.



You can also click a screen in the main window to jump directly to it. Each screen in the background represents a different backup time. You can also move through backups by clicking the graduated scale along the right side of the Time Machine screen.

- **3.** Use the Finder window and its sidebar to browse to the file that you want to restore. If you can't find the desired file, go back in time to an earlier backup.
- **4.** When you find the file that you want to back up, select it and click Restore in the lower-right corner of the Time Machine window.



Click Cancel if you want to close Time Machine without restoring a file.

5. Check the restored file to make sure it's the one you want. If the restored file has the same name as an item that's currently on your computer, the restored file assumes the proper name and the existing file has (original) tacked onto its name, as shown in Figure 3-20.

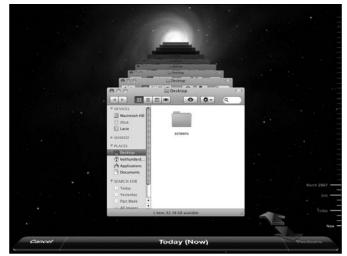


Figure 3-19: Move back in time on your system using Time Machine.

000	Documents	C
		Q
VDEVICES Ø iDisk Ø Network Macintosh HD Lacie soyo-p4 vPACES	Name Screens Writing Stuff Writing Stuff (original)	 Date Modified Jun 26, 2007, 11:27 PM Today, 8:31 PM Today, 7:12 PM
Desktop	{ 3 items, 60.5 CB available	

Figure 3-20: Compare current and restored versions after performing a backup.

Suppress Desktop Icons for CDs and iPods

- 1. Open a Finder window (or click an empty area of the Desktop) and choose Finder >Preferences.
- **2.** In General options, remove the check mark next to CDs, DVDs, and iPods, as shown in Figure 3-21.
- 3. Close the Finder Preferences window.



38

You can still eject discs and iPods by using the Eject commands in iTunes and DVD Player by using the Eject key on your keyboard, or by clicking the Eject symbol next to the item in a Finder window sidebar.

GO Finder Preferences	
General Labels Sidebar Advanced	
General Cabers Sidebal Advanced	-
Show these items on the Desktop:	
🗹 Hard disks	
CDs, DVDs, and iPods	
Connected servers	
New Finder windows open:	
🕆 Home 🗘	
Always open folders in a new window	
Open new windows in column view	
Spring-loaded folders and windows	
Delay:	
Press Space Bar to open immediately	

Figure 3-21: Use Finder preferences to suppress certain Desktop icons.

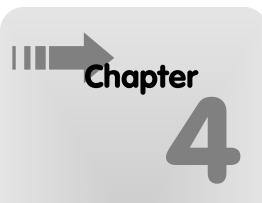
Adjusting System Preferences

The Macintosh computer is known for its ease of use, but "easy" doesn't mean simplistic. Beneath the friendly exterior of OS X is a powerful operating system, which can be configured for almost any task by using a wide selection of hardware.

This chapter shows you how to configure the system software for your specific needs and hardware. Tasks show you how to take command of both the internal hardware in your Mac and the peripherals attached to it. Specific tasks include

- ➡ Internal components: Operating system tools help you make the most efficient use of your laptop's batteries, decide which disk is used to boot the system, and update the OS X software.
- Peripherals: Your Mac can work with a variety of different printers, monitors, keyboards, and audio devices. Configuring peripherals in OS X is easy.

The tasks in this chapter show you how to control your computer's hardware with OS X software tools. The final task also shows you more about the specifications and performance of your computer, which is important if you decide to make some upgrades. If you want to upgrade the actual hardware of your Mac, see Chapter 23.



Get ready to . . .

→ Save Energy with Power Settings	40
🗝 Update System Software	41
🖚 Select a Startup Disk	42
➡ Manage Printers	42
	44
ightarrow Change Keyboard and Mouse Settings .	45
➡ Adjust Audio Settings	46
and Performance	47

Save Energy with Power Settings

- 1. Open System Preferences by choosing Apple System Preferences.
- **2.** Click the Energy Saver icon.
- **3.** If you have a laptop, choose Battery in the Settings menu, and then select a power saving profile in the Optimization menu.
- **4.** Click Sleep to display Sleep options, as shown in Figure 4-1.
- *5.* Adjust the sliders to change when the computer and monitor will go to sleep.



The monitor uses a lot of power, so it's a good idea to let the display sleep after a minute or two of inactivity.

6. Click Options to review power saving options, such as whether you want a Battery icon to appear on the menu bar or whether you want the display to dim automatically before going to sleep.



The settings available on the Options screen vary depending on whether you're adjusting Power Adapter or Battery settings.

- **7.** Click Schedule. If you want the computer to wake or start at a certain time each day, place a check mark next to Start Up or Wake and then choose dates and times for automatic startup, as shown in Figure 4-2.
- **8.** If you have a laptop, choose Power Adapter in the Settings For menu and then repeat Steps 3-7 to adjust settings for when your computer is plugged in to wall power.

		Energy S	Saver				
Show All						Q	
		Sleep C	ptions				
Put the computer to	o sleep when it	is inactive for	:				
1 min	1 1 1 15 min	1 1	'	1. 1	3	i i 3 hrs	Never
Put the display(s) to	o sleep when th	e computer is	inactive f	or:			
1 1 1 1 min	1 9 1 15 min	1 1	1 1 1 hr	1 1	э	i i 3 hrs	Never
☑ Put the hard disl	k(s) to sleep wh	en possible					(?)

Figure 4-1: During inactivity, the computer can go to sleep to save power.

00		Energy Saver				
I ► Sho	Start up or wake	Weekdays	🗘 at	8:00 AM		_
Put the co	Sleep \$	Every Day	1 at 1	2:00 AM 🔹		
' 1 min	0		Cance	ОК ОК		' Never
Put the dis	splay(s) to sleep when the c	omputer is inac	tive for:		_	_
1 min	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	1 1 1	1 hr	ar ar re	3 hrs	Never
☑ Put the	hard disk(s) to sleep when	possible				?
					_	
Restore Defa	aults				Sc	hedule

Figure 4-2: Schedule your computer to start up or sleep automatically.

Update System Software

- 1. Make sure that your computer is connected to the Internet.
- 2. Close all open applications.



Look at the Dock and make sure that you quit all programs. Running programs have a small, black triangle below their icons. You can't quit the Finder and Dashboard, but you can quit everything else.

- **3.** Choose Apple Software Update. After a few seconds, a list of available updates appears in the Software Update window.
- **4.** Review each item and remove check marks next to items that you don't want to update, as shown in Figure 4-3.



If you're not sure what an item is, click it once. A description of the update appears in the bottom section of the Software Update window.

- **5.** Click the Install button at the bottom of the Software Update window to begin downloading the updates.
- **6.** Enter your administrator password when you're prompted to do so, as shown in Figure 4-4, and then click OK.
- **7.** Read and accept any license agreements that appear. If you're downloading multiple updates, you may have to accept multiple agreements. After you accept all the agreements, a status window shows you the download status of your updates.



When you review the list of updates, look for ones that say they must be installed separately. These should be downloaded individually, which means you may have to run Software Update a couple of times.

	New software is available for If you're not ready to install now, y preference to check for updates la	you can use the S		
Install	Name	Version	Size	T
	Pages Update	1.0.2	28.7 MB	1
	Apple Intermediate Codec	1.0.1	740 KB	1
\checkmark	Keynote Update	2.0.2	21.9 MB	
	GarageBand Update	2.0.2	14.6 MB	1
	iPhoto Update	5.0.4	41.0 MB	4
⊻	Java 1.3.1 and 1.4.2 Release 2	2 2.0	45.3 MB	ŧ.
o 🗹	iTunes Phone Driver	1.0	380 KB	14
○ ■	QuickTime	7.1.2	51.4 MB	
on Mac OS	and 1.4.2 Release 2 delivers improved X V10.4. This release includes Java 2 f nd 1.4.2_09.			

Figure 4-3: Deselect updates for programs or features you don't use.



Figure 4-4: An administrator password is required to install updates.

Select a Startup Disk

- **1.** Open System Preferences and then click the Startup Disk icon.
- **2.** Select the disk you want to use when the computer starts up, as shown in Figure 4-5.
- **3.** If you want to restart the computer right now using a different disk or operating system, click Restart. Otherwise, simply close the Startup Disk window.

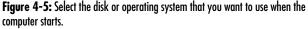
Manage Printers

- **1.** Open System Preferences and then click the Print & Fax icon.
- **2.** To add a printer, click the Add button (it looks like a plus sign) below the list of available printers.
- **3.** Click the button corresponding to the type of printer that you want to add. For example, click Windows if you are adding a printer connected to a Windows PC on your network, or Bluetooth to add a Bluetooth printer.
- **4.** Select the name of the computer to which the new printer is connected, as shown in Figure 4-6.



Normally, it is necessary to manually add network printers only. Printers installed directly to your computer following the printer manufacturer's instructions should already appear in your list of printers.





				Ik More Printers	Searc
workgroup freelance	4	soyo-p4	4	Printer2 HP Deskjet 845	
Name: Location:	HP Des	kjet 845c			
Print Using:	Generi	c PostScript F	rinter		\$

Figure 4-6: Select the computer to which the new printer is connected.

- *5.* When you're prompted to enter a name and password, enter a username and password that is valid on the computer to which you're trying to connect. Click OK.
- **6.** Select the name of the printer that you want to add, as shown in Figure 4-7.
- **7.** In the Print Using menu, choose Select a Driver to Use, and then choose the model name in the list that appears below. Click Add.



If your printer's manufacturer or model isn't listed in any menu, choose Generic PostScript Printer in the Print Using menu.

- **8.** In the list of printers, as shown in Figure 4-8, check the status of your newly added printer. A green dot next to the printer's name means that the printer is ready to use.
- *9.* To set a specific printer as your default printer, choose that printer in the Selected Printer in Print Dialog menu, as shown in Figure 4-8.
- **10.** To adjust printer-specific settings, select the printer and click Options & Supplies. The Printer Options and Supplies utility runs, with options and settings tailored to the printer. Here you can change the name and model of the printer, its location, and other details.

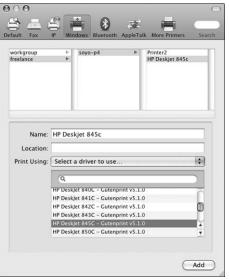
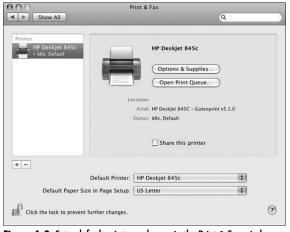
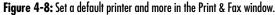


Figure 4-7: Select the name of the printer that you want to add.





Calibrate the Display Color

- **1.** Open System Preferences and then click the Displays icon.
- **2.** Click Color to open the color preferences for your monitor.
- **3.** Choose a profile that matches your monitor or display, as shown in Figure 4-9.



If you're not sure which profile is compatible with your monitor, place a check mark next to Show Profiles for This Display Only. Incompatible profiles disappear from the list.



Color calibration is usually necessary only if you have special color needs — for example, you're editing video for broadcast or performing professional graphics production — or if you're not satisfied with the color performance of your monitor.

- 4. Click Calibrate.
- **5.** Read the instructions in the Display Calibrator Assistant and then click Continue.



Do not use the Expert mode unless your monitor performs poorly and you're experienced with color calibration.

- *6.* Follow the wizard instructions to calibrate colors. When you get to the Select a Target Gamma screen, as shown in Figure 4-10, you may want to choose a setting that matches the target display of your work rather than your computer's current display.
- 7. On the last screen of the Display Calibrator Assistant, click Done to create your new calibrated color profile.

00	A90	ſf+
Show All		٩
	Display	Color
Display Profile:		
A90f+		Show profiles for this display only
		Open Profile
		Delete Profile
		Calibrate
		(?)



000	Display Calibrator Assistant
	Select a target gamma
 Introduction Set Up Native Gamma Target Gamma Target White Point Admin Name Conclusion 	 Select your desired gamma setting for this display. This will adjust the overall of the display. Watch the overall setting for the different options. In most cases, it is the traditional gamma of 1.8. A Standard Camma This is the traditional setting for Mac OS computers. A Television Camma You may want to select this setting if you are your your your to select this setting if you are your guidence on PC-compatible computers. After you have done this step, click the Continue button.
	Go Back Continue

Figure 4-10: Experiment at each step to calibrate your display.



Change Keyboard and Mouse Settings

- **1.** Open System Preferences and then click the Keyboard & Mouse icon.
- **2.** Click the Keyboard button to bring keyboard settings to the front, as shown in Figure 4-11.
- **3.** Adjust the Key Repeat Rate and Delay Until Repeat sliders to change the rate of repeat when you hold down keyboard keys.



If you have a laptop but want to use the function keys (F1 through F12) for application features, place a check mark next to Use the F1–F12 Keys to Control Software Features.

4. Click the Trackpad or Mouse button, as appropriate.



If you're using a laptop, the Mouse button appears only if a mouse is connected to the computer.

- **5.** Use the sliders to adjust the tracking speed, double-click speed, and scrolling speed (if appropriate), as shown in Figure 4-12.
- 6. Adjust other device specific settings, including
 - **Two-button mouse:** If you have a two-button mouse, you can choose whether the right or left button is the primary button.
 - **Trackpads:** Newer Apple trackpads incorporate twofingered scrolling. You can also enable clicking by tapping on the trackpad.

00	Keyboard	d & Mouse
• • • S	how All	Q
-	Keyboard Trackpad Blu	etooth Keyboard Shortcuts
	Key Repeat Rate	Delay Until Repeat
	Slow Fast	Off Long ' Short
	Type here to	test settings
		o control software features id, press the Fn key to use the rdware features.
Modif	fier Keys)	(?)

Figure 4-11: Change the keyboard repeat rate here.

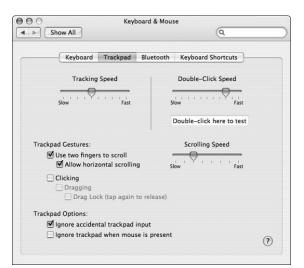


Figure 4-12: Fine-tune the mouse or trackpad to your own pointing habits.

Adjust Audio Settings

- 1. Open System Preferences and then click the Sound icon.
- **2.** Click the Sound Effects button to bring sound effect settings to the front.
- 3. Choose a new alert sound, as shown in Figure 4-13.
- **4.** Choose whether you want audible feedback to play when you adjust the volume.
- **5.** Click the Output button to choose which speakers are used for audio output and to adjust the speaker balance, as shown in Figure 4-14.



In some cases, an operating system bug can cause audio balance to change inadvertently when you adjust volume with the function keys. If your speakers don't seem to be balanced properly between the left and right channels, open the sound output settings and double-check the volume.

6. Click the Input button to adjust the input volume for your computer's microphone. Speak normally and watch the Input Level indicators to fine-tune the microphone level.



The Input Level indicators light up to the middle and upper part of the scale during speech. If the level is too low, your voice will be too quiet. If the level is too high and the indicators routinely bounce off the top of the scale, audible distortion may occur.

0	Sound	
Show All		۹
	Sound Effects Output Input	
Choose an alert sound		
Name	Туре	
Purr	Built-in	ñ
Sosumi	Built-in	r i
Submarine	Built–in	
Tink	Built-in	
Play alerts and sound Alert volume:	d effects through: Headphones	\$
Output volume:		Mute

Figure 4-13: You can customize the OS X alert sound.

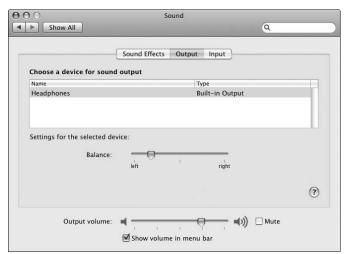


Figure 4-14: Use Output settings to adjust audio balance.

Checking System Specifications and Performance

- Choose Apple ⇒About This Mac, and then click More Info.
- **2.** In the System Profiler window that appears, click Disc Burning in the Hardware menu.



If you're not sure whether your computer has a Combo drive for burning CDs or a SuperDrive for burning both CDs and DVDs, check the Disc Burning properties. If you see a DVD-Write section, your Mac has a SuperDrive.

- **3.** Click Memory in the Hardware menu to check the size and status of your system memory, as shown in Figure 4-15. The Status column lists the performance status of each memory slot.
- **4.** Click AirPort Card in the Network menu to see what kind of AirPort card (AirPort or AirPort Extreme) you have.
- Click Applications in the Software menu to list the applications installed on your computer as shown in Figure 4-16. Review the list and note the system listed in the Kind column. Most applications are one of four kinds:
 - Classic: Requires OS 9 to be installed
 - **PowerPC or Native:** Compatible with OS X running on PowerPC-based Macs
 - Intel: Compatible with OS X running on Intel-based Macs
 - **Universal:** Universal binary, compatible with PowerPC- and Intel-based Macs
- 6. Review other categories as needed.

000	keith-underdahl	s-mac-mini			
Keith Underdahl's Mac mini				7/2/07	10:32 Pf
Contents	Memory Slot	▲ Size	Туре	Speed	Status
▼Hardware 😽	BANK 0/DIMM0	256 MB	DDR2 SDRAM	667 MHz	OK
ATA Audio (Built In) Bluetooth Diagnostics Disc Burning Fibre Channel FireWire	BANK 1/DIMM1	256 MB	DDR2 SDRAM	667 MHz	OK
Graphics/Displays Memory					
PC Cards PCI Cards Parallel SCSI Power Primers SAS Serial-ATA USB Vietwork Alirfort Card Firewall Locations Modems Volumes Volumes Volumes Software Applications	BANK O/DIMMO: Size: 256 MB Type: DDR2 5DRAM Speed: 657 MHz Status: OK				

Figure 4-15: Here you can check the size and performance of your computer's memory.

000		keith-underdahls-mac-mini			
Keith Underdahl's Mac min	d .			7/2/07 10:33	25
Contents	Application Name	Version	Last Modified	Kind	
▼ Hardware	Activity Monitor	10.5	5/23/07 10.16 PM	Universal	
ATA	AddPrinter	204	5/27/07 8:32 PM	Universal	
Audio (Built In)	Address Book	4.1	5/31/07 11:24 PM	Universal	
Bluetooth	Adobe Help Viewer 1.1	1.1	7/1/07 6:42 PM	Universal	
Diagnostics	Adobe Photoshop CS3	10.0 (10.0x20070321 [20070321.m.1480 2007.	7/1/07 6:45 PM	Universal	
Disc Burning	Adobe Stock Photos CS3	Adobe Stock Photos 1.5.0.466	7/1/07 6:43 PM	Universal	
Fibre Channel	Adobe Updater	Adobe Updater 5.1.0.1082	7/1/07 6:43 PM	Universal	
FireWire	AirPort Disk Agent	1.1.1	5/13/07 4:26 AM	Universal	
Graphics/Displays	AirPort Disk Utility	1.1.1	5/13/07 4:26 AM	Universal	
Memory	AirPort Utility	5.1.1	11/29/06 10:35 AM	Universal	
PC Cards	AppleFileServer	4.0	5/30/07 3:51 PM	Universal	
PCI Cards	AppleScript Runner	1.0	5/24/07 10:52 PM	Universal	
Parallel SCSI	AppleScript Utility	1.1	5/17/07 11:04 PM	Universal	
Power	Archive Utility	10.5	5/13/07 9:50 AM	Universal	
Printers	ARDAgent	3.2	5/29/07 12:01 AM	Universal	
SAS	Audio MIDI Setup	2.2.2	5/25/07 5:15 PM	Universal	
Serial-ATA	* Automator	2.0	5/27/07 8:30 PM	Universal	
USB	Automator Launcher	1.1	5/27/07 8:30 PM	Universal	
▼ Network	Automator Runner	1.0	5/27/07 8:30 PM	Universal	
AirPort Card	AVRCPAgent	2.0	6/4/07 9:22 PM	Universal	
Firewall	Bluetooth File Exchange	2.0	6/4/07 9:22 PM	Universal	
Locations	Bluetooth Setup Assistant	2.0	6/4/07 9:23 PM	Universal	
Modems	BluetoothAudioAgent	2.0	6/4/07 9:22 PM	Universal	
Volumes	BluetoothUlServer	2.0	6/4/07 9:21 PM	Universal	
* Software					
Applications					
Extensions	Activity Monitor:				
Fonts	Version: 10.5				
Frameworks		10:16 PM			
Logs	Kind: Universa				
Managed Client		2002-2007 Apple Computer Inc. All Rights Reserved	£.		
Preference Panes	Location: /Applica	tions/Utilities/Activity Monitor.app			
Startup Items					
Universal Access					

Figure 4-16: Check the system compatibility of your applications.



Part 2 Getting to Work in OS X



Chapter 5: Utilizing OS X Applications	51
Open the Applications Folder	52
Plan Your Life with iCal	52
Add Contacts to Your Address Book	54
Edit Text with TextEdit	55
Organize Pictures with iPhoto	56
Create PDF Files	57
Look Up Words in the Dictionary	58
Quit an Application	
Chapter 6: Using Productivity Software	61

Create a New Pages Document	62
Style Text in Pages	
Insert a Photo into a Pages Document	
Print a Pages Document	64
Start a New Keynote Presentation	65
Insert Slides	66
Formatting Text	67
Add Graphics to Presentations	
Present a Keynote Presentation	

Open Dashboard	72
Add Items to Dashboard	
Create Web Clip Widgets	
Check Weather	
Leave Sticky Notes	76
Track Flights	
Translate Foreign Languages	
Convert Units of Measure	
Check Movie Times	
Download New Dashboard Widgets	

Utilizing OS X Applications

Personal computers first became popular in the 1980s, well before iPods and the Internet became integral parts of our lives. Why did people spend hundreds or even thousands of dollars on computers like the Apple II, TRS-80, IBM PC, and early Macintosh? Even before digital multimedia and the online world, computers served as powerful tools for organizing lives, typing reports and memos, and storing information.

Today we take it for granted that our computers will help us compose letters, track schedules, and manage contacts. And with a Mac, you really *can* take these things for granted because new Macintosh computers come with an array of free programs to help you accomplish many common tasks. These programs live in the OS X Applications folder, and this chapter shows you how to use some of them. This chapter shows you how to

- Keep a personal schedule with iCal.
- Manage names, addresses, and other contact information with the Address Book.
- Edit text files with TextEdit.
- Store and organize pictures with iPhoto (a free program on most new Macs, or available as part of iLife).
- Expand your vocabulary with the built-in dictionary.
- Recover from unfortunate deletions with Time Machine.
- Save any file as a PDF file for easy online sharing.

Chapter 5

Get ready to . . .

→ Open the Applications Folder	.52
➡ Plan Your Life with iCal	.52
Add Contacts to Your Address Book	.54
➡ Edit Text with TextEdit	.55
Horganize Pictures with iPhoto	.56
➡ Create PDF Files	.57
➡ Look Up Words in the Dictionary	.58
🖚 Quit an Application	.59

Open the Applications Folder

- 1. Open any Finder window. You can click the Finder icon on the Dock or simply double-click the hard drive icon on your Desktop.
- **2.** Click Applications in the Finder Sidebar to open the Applications folder, as shown in Figure 5-1.
- **3.** To launch an application, simply double-click its icon in the Applications folder.



In some cases you may need to open a subfolder before launching an application. For example, if you have Microsoft Office installed, you may need to open the Office subfolder in the Applications folder before opening a program, such as Word or Excel.

Plan Your Life with iCal

1. Open the Applications folder and then double-click the iCal icon.



52

You may also be able to launch iCal from the Dock.

- **2.** In the Calendars menu on the left side of the iCal window, place check marks next to the calendars you want to display. For example, if you want only your home schedule to display, remove the check mark next to Work.
- **3.** To create a new calendar (in addition to the default Home and Work calendars), choose Filet⇒New Calendar and then type a name for the calendar, as shown in Figure 5-2.
- **4.** To add a calendar event, first select the calendar to which it should be added.



Figure 5-1: Applications are easy to find in OS X.

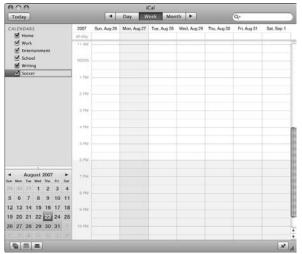


Figure 5-2: iCal lets you keep separate calendars for various parts of your life.

5. In the month calendar shown in the lower-left corner of the iCal screen, click the day on which you want to create the event.



Use the arrows above the calendar to move to a different month.

- **6.** In the main calendar window in the middle of the iCal screen, click and drag a box around the time of your event or appointment and then type a name for the event, as shown in Figure 5-3.
- **7.** For a monthly overview of appointments, click Month near the top of the iCal window.
- **8.** To see details of an event, double-click the event in the main calendar. Information about the event appears in a pop-up Event window, as shown in Figure 5-4.
- *9.* Type notes pertaining to the event in the lower section of the Event window or change the time and other event details in the upper section. Click Done to close the Event window.



If the event is an all-day appointment, place a check mark next to All-Day in the Info pane on the right side of the screen.



Use the Calendar menu in the Info pane to move events from one of your calendars (such as Home) to another calendar (such as Work).

10. To remove an event from iCal, simply click the event once to select it and then press the Delete key on your keyboard.



If you delete an event by accident, you can undo the deletion by choosing Edit=>Undo.

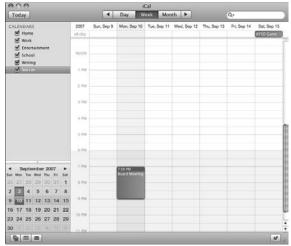


Figure 5-3: Adding events to the calendar is easy.



Figure 5-4: You can view your calendar by month as well.

Add Contacts to Your Address Book

1. Open the Applications folder and then double-click the Address Book icon to launch the Address Book.



You can also launch the Address Book from other applications, such as iCal and Apple Mail.

- **2.** To add a new person to the Address Book, click the Add New Person button, which looks like a plus sign and is located below the list of names.
- **3.** Type the person's name, company, phone numbers, addresses, and other information, as shown in Figure 5-5.
- **4.** To edit an entry later, simply click the name of the person you want to change and then click Edit under their Card.
- **5.** To add a picture to a person's Address Book card, click the name in the list and then double-click the picture icon next to the name.
- **6.** In the picture chooser that appears as shown in Figure 5-6, click Choose. Use the Finder window that appears to find and select an image on your hard drive.
- 7. Zoom in on the image by using the Zoom slider below the picture and then click and drag the image left or right and up or down to reposition it. The area in the central box will be used in the Address Book.
- 8. Click Set.
- **9.** To remove a person from your Address Book, select the name in the Name list and then choose Edit^t⇒Delete Card.

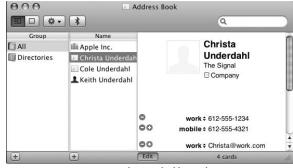


Figure 5-5: Enter names, numbers, and addresses here.



Figure 5-6: You can add personal photos to Address Book cards.

54

Edit Text with TextEdit

- **1.** Open the Applications folder and then double-click the TextEdit icon.
- 2. Begin typing text, as shown in Figure 5-7.
- **3.** To change the size or formatting of text, click and drag over a passage of text to select it and then choose Format^L>Font. Make a selection from the Font window to change the size of text or apply characteristics, such as bold or italics.



You can change alignment and spacing of text by choosing Format=>Text.

- **4.** To save your work, choose File Save. Choose a folder in which to save the file and enter a name.
- **5.** To print your text, choose File Print. Select a printer, specify the pages to print and the number of copies of each, and then click Print.
- **6.** If you're not happy with the default text size or appearance, choose TextEdit⇔Preferences to open the Preferences window, as shown in Figure 5-8.
- 7. Choose whether you want the default format to be Rich Text or Plain Text. Rich Text allows you to format text so that it looks nice, but Plain Text is required for certain types of files, such as HyperText Markup Language (HTML) files.
- **8.** To change the default text appearance, click Change next to either Plain Text Font or Rich Text Font. In the Font window, choose different default fonts, styles, and sizes, as desired.

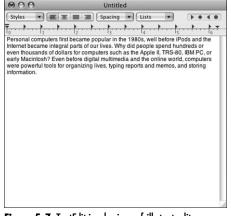


Figure 5-7: TextEdit is a basic, no-frills text editor.

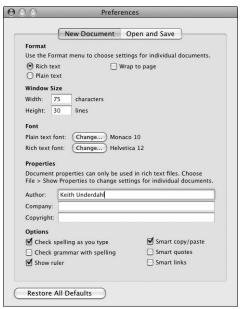


Figure 5-8: Change the default text size and other TextEdit settings here.



Organize Pictures with iPhoto

- 1. Open the Applications folder and then double-click the iPhoto icon. If you're launching iPhoto for the first time, you're asked if you want to use iPhoto when you connect a digital camera to the computer. Click a button to make a choice.
- **2.** Connect your digital camera to your computer's Universal Serial Bus (USB) port and turn on the camera. The camera should be in picture viewing mode, not picture taking mode.
- **3.** When iPhoto switches to Import mode, as shown in Figure 5-9, type a name and description for the roll.
- **4.** Click Import to begin importing photos from your camera.



To import pictures that are already on your hard drive into iPhoto, choose File+>Add to Library. Use the Finder window that appears to browse and import photos.

- **5.** To create a new album in which to organize certain pictures, choose File⇔New Album and then type a descriptive name for the album.
- **6.** Click and drag photos from the Library window to the new album, as shown in Figure 5-10.



56

To copy multiple photos, first click and drag a box around the photos you want to move. After a group is selected, you can click and drag that group to a new album.

7. Click the name of an album to view its contents.

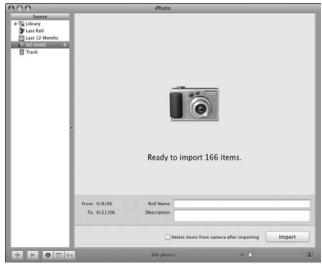


Figure 5-9: iPhoto automatically detects most digital cameras.



Figure 5-10: Click and drag pictures to copy them to different albums.

Create PDF Files

- **1.** Create a document in any application. The document can be text, a picture, or almost anything else, and it can be created in a bundled OS X application or a third-party application.
- 2. After you're done editing the file, choose Edit Print.
- **3.** Choose PDF=>Save as PDF, as shown in Figure 5-11.
- 4. Type a file name for the PDF file in the Save as field.
- *5.* Choose a location in which to save the PDF file in the Where menu.
- 6. Click Save.
- **7.** Locate the saved PDF file and double-click it to open it. If you have a PDF reader program, such as Adobe Reader installed, the PDF file opens in that program, as shown in Figure 5-12. Otherwise, the PDF file opens in Preview.



If you don't have Adobe Reader installed on your computer, visit www.adobe.com to download it for free. Although the OS X Preview program can open and display PDFs, Preview can't take full advantage of PDF features such as cross-document links, forms, and multi-volume searching.

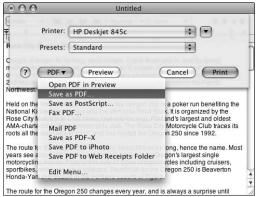


Figure 5-11: Use any application's Print window to create a PDF file.

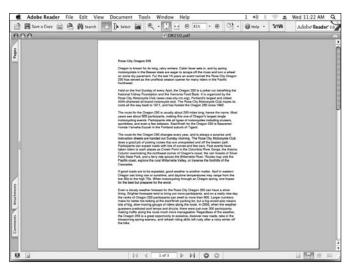


Figure 5-12: PDF files can be shared easily with others.

Look Up Words in the Dictionary

- **1.** Open the Applications folder and then double-click the Dictionary icon.
- **2.** Start typing a word in the search box of the Dictionary and Thesaurus window, as shown in Figure 5-13. Type slowly and note the list of words that appears and is narrowed down with each letter you add. If the word you type isn't in the dictionary, you see a warning and suggestions, as shown in Figure 5-13.
- **3.** Double-click a word in the list to view its definition, as shown in Figure 5-14.
- **4.** Scroll down the page to find derivatives, etymology, and synonyms.
- **5.** To return to the previous Dictionary screen, choose History ⇒ Back.



The Dictionary is interactive. If you see a word in a definition that you don't understand, simply double-click the word. That word's Dictionary entry appears.



To change the preferred Dictionary or pronunciation guide, choose Dictionary⊏>Preferences. In the Preferences window, you can change these and other Dictionary settings.

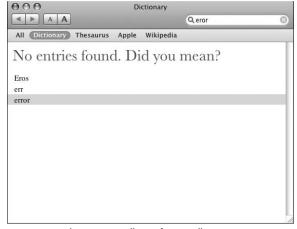


Figure 5-13: The Dictionary tells you if your spelling is incorrect.

000	Dictionary	
		Q error 🛞
All Dictionary Thesaurus Ap	ople Wikipedia	
 been paid in error the crash Basebal a misplay by a field advance. technical a measure of the e calculated value of a quantiti Law a mistake of fact or of 	eing wrong in con was caused by hum , der that allows a b estimated difference ty and its true valu 'law in a court's op	duct or judgment : <i>the money had</i> <i>an error</i> , atter to reach base or a runner to be between the observed or ic.
PHRASES see the error of one's ways	realize or acknow	vledge one's wrongdoing.
DERIVATIVES er•ror•less adjective		
ORIGIN Middle English : via (err.'	Old French from I	Latin error , from errare 'to stray,

Figure 5-14: The Dictionary lists definitions and synonyms.

Quit an Application

- To see if an application is still running, hover the mouse pointer over the Dock. Icons with arrows below them such as TextEdit and Preview, as shown in Figure 5-15 are still running, even if you closed all documents in that program.
- **2.** To quit an application, first click the application's icon on the Dock to make the application active.
- **3.** Click the name of the application (for example, TextEdit or Preview) on the menu bar and choose Quit from the menu that appears, as shown in Figure 5-16.



You can also press $\Re + Q$ to quickly quit an active program.



Make a habit of quitting programs after you're done using them. Each program that is left running uses up some memory and other system resources. Unlike Windows programs, most Macintosh applications don't quit when you simply click a window's red Close button.



Figure 5-15: An arrow below the icon means that program is still running.

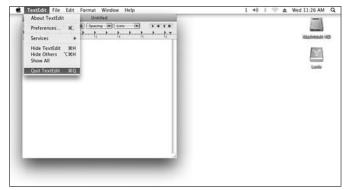


Figure 5-16: You must quit the application to truly close it.



Using Productivity Software

you may have heard some of your Windows-using friends say things like, "I'd use a Mac, but the programs I need aren't available for OS X."

Given this perception, it comes as a surprise to many people that, in fact, a lot of applications *are* available for OS X, including ubiquitous Microsoft Office applications like Word, PowerPoint, and Excel. If you have work to get done, your Macintosh is up to the task.

Applications, such as word processors, spreadsheet programs, and presentation programs, are often called *productivity* programs. Apple offers its own suite of productivity programs — *iWork*. iWork is more affordable than Microsoft Office and includes *Pages* (a word processor) and *Keynote* (a presentation program).

This chapter focuses primarily on iWork applications although many of the basic techniques apply to Microsoft Office as well. To order iWork, visit your local Apple retailer or see www.apple.com/iwork. Tasks show how to create and edit new presentations and word processing documents with iWork applications.



Free trials of Apple iWork and Microsoft Office are pre-installed in the Applications folders of most new Macs. For more on using Microsoft Office applications for OS X, check out *Microsoft Office v.10 for Macs For Dummies* by Tom Negrino (Wiley Publishing, Inc.).

Chapter 6

Get ready to . . .

→ Create a New Pages Document	62
➡ Style Text in Pages	63
➡ Insert a Photo into a Pages Document	64
➡ Print a Pages Document	64
➡ Start a New Keynote Presentation	65
➡ Insert Slides	66
➡ Formatting Text	67
Add Graphics to Presentations	68
	69

Create a New Pages Document

1. Launch Pages from the iWork subfolder in the Applications folder.



If this is your first time launching iWork, click Try to test iWork free for 30 days.

2. Choose a template for your new document, as shown in Figure 6-1. To choose a template, click a document category in the list on the left and then scroll through the available templates on the right. When you find the template you want to use, click the template to select it and then click Choose.



To create another new document at any time in Pages, choose $\mathsf{File}{\leftarrow}\mathsf{New}.$

- **3.** Begin typing text, as you would in any word processor or text editing program.
- **4.** To save the document, choose File=>Save.
- **5.** In the Save As sheet that appears, type a name for the document. If you want to choose a different folder, click the down arrow to the right of the Save As field to open a small Finder window, as shown in Figure 6-2.
- **6.** After you give a name and select the folder that you want to save the file in, click Save.



Save your document frequently while you work. To quickly save a document, press \Re +S.

00	¢	Unt	itled		
, /iew	Choose a template fo	r your document:	1	0 9 8	
	All Blank Newsletters Journals Flyers Posters Invitations Stationery Resumes Business Marketing Creative Education	Blank Blank	ETTREME Extreme Newsletter Family Newsletter	Salling Newsletter	0
	Open an Existing File	a)		Close Choos	•

Figure 6-1: Pages includes many helpful document templates.

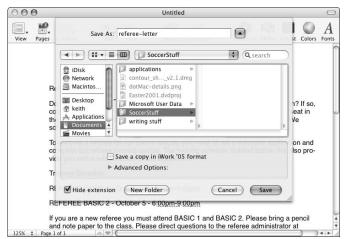


Figure 6-2: Save your work often.

Style Text in Pages

- 1. Click to place the cursor in the paragraph to which you want to apply a paragraph style.
- **2.** Click the Style menu and choose a paragraph style, as shown in Figure 6-3.
- **3.** To change the alignment of text, place the cursor in the desired paragraph and choose Formatt Text. Choose an alignment option, such as Center or Justify.
- **4.** To create a bulleted or numbered list, select each line of text in the list and then click the List button. Choose a list style from the submenu that appears.
- **5.** To change the style of a smaller passage of text, click and drag over the text to select it, as shown in Figure 6-4.
- **6.** Click the Fonts button on the far-right side of the Pages toolbar and then choose a different font or style. The Fonts panel organizes fonts into collections and families. In Figure 6-4, the selected text was made bold.



You can also access font properties and other appearance settings by choosing Format=>Font.



To change the color of selected text, click and drag to select the text and then click the Colors button. Use the Colors panel that appears to choose a new text color.

7. Close the Font window after you're done changing the text.

000	ď	referee-letter					0		
View Pages Columns	Show Styles Drawe	r pjects Comment	i nspector	Media	Adjust	Colors	A		
	Free Form ✓ Body						ſ		
Referee Training Do you want to t consider becom	Footnote Text	our kids, but you							
the house, and y schedule you ar	/ Lloading	ds sportsmanship	eferee is fun and easy! You get the best seat in is sportsmanship, fun, and proper play. We mes and your requests.						
To become a ref complete our ref vide you with a r	Title		gue, you must fill out a volunteer application and ne training schedule is listed below. We also pro- lipment.						
Training Schedu	le	-							
REFEREE BASIC 1 - October 3 - 6:00pm-9:00pm									
REFEREE BAS	IC 2 - October 5 - 6:	:00pm-9:00pm					- 1		
		ttend BASIC 1 and E direct questions to t					4 ×		

Figure 6-3: Quickly style text by using paragraph styles.



Figure 6-4: Click and drag over text to select it.

Insert a Photo into a Pages Document

- **1.** Create a document, into which you want to insert a photo, in Pages.
- 2. Place the cursor where you want to insert the photo.
- **3.** Choose Insert与Choose.
- 4. Browse to the photo you want to insert.
- *5.* Click the photo to select it, as shown in Figure 6-5, and then click Insert to include it in the document.



If the image doesn't fit well into your document, click and drag the corner handles of the image to resize it.

Print a Pages Document

- **1.** Compose a document in Pages, as I describe earlier in this chapter.
- 2. Choose File Print.
- **3.** In the Print tab that appears, click the down arrow to expand print options, as shown in Figure 6-6.
- **4.** Select the number of copies and other print options, as shown in Figure 6-6.
- 5. Click Print to begin printing.



To create a PDF file of your document, choose PDF=>Save as PDF in the lower-left corner of the Print window.



Figure 6-5: Choose the photo that you want to insert.

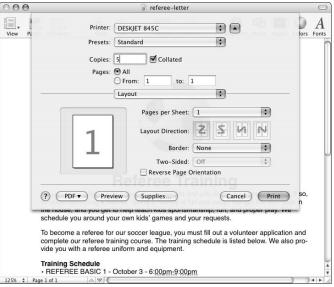


Figure 6-6: Choose printing options for your document.

Start a New Keynote Presentation

1. Open the iWork subfolder in the Applications folder and then double-click Keynote to launch the program.



If this is your first time launching iWork, click Try to test iWork free for 30 days.

- **2.** Choose a template, as shown in Figure 6-7, for your new presentation. To choose a template, scroll through the list of available templates on the right. When you find the template you want to use, click the template to select it.
- 3. Select a size for your slides in the Slide Size menu.



If your presentation will be viewed in a large room via a projector with average lighting and resolution, stick with a relatively small slide size, such as 800 x 600. Larger slide sizes may result in text that is hard to read from the back row.

- **4.** Click Choose to create a new presentation by using your chosen template and slide size.
- **5.** Type a title and subtitle for your presentation in the provided text boxes on the first slide.
- **6.** Choose File≓>Save.
- **7.** In the Save tab that appears, enter a file name for your presentation, as shown in Figure 6-8.
- **8.** Choose a folder in which to save the presentation in the Where menu and then click Save.



Figure 6-7: Choose a template and slide size.



Figure 6-8: Name and save your presentation.

Insert Slides

- 1. Open a Keynote presentation.
- **2.** Click the New button in the upper-left corner of the Keynote window to insert a new slide, as shown in Figure 6-9.
- **3.** To open a specific slide, click the slide in the Slides list on the left side of the screen.
- **4.** To change the order of slides, click and drag slides up or down to new positions. Slides at the top of the list appear first when the slideshow is played.
- *5.* To quickly change the layout or format of a slide, click the Masters button and choose a new master, as shown in Figure 6-10.
- 6. Click in the text areas and type text for your new slide.



To delete a slide, open the slide and choose Edit⊏>Delete. If you have a two-button mouse, you can also right-click a slide and choose Delete from the contextual menu that appears.



To quickly create a new slide based on an existing slide, open the existing slide and choose Edit=>Duplicate. An exact copy of the slide is added to the presentation.

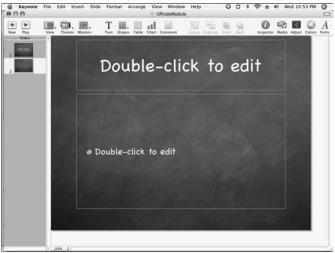


Figure 6-9: Click New to add a slide.

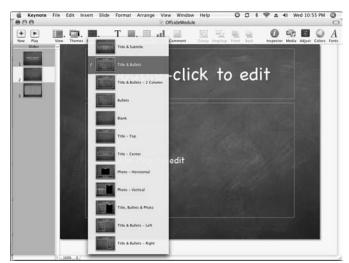


Figure 6-10: Choose a master for your new slide.

Formatting Text

1. Enter text into a text box on a slide.



To add a new text box to a slide, click the Text button on the Keynote toolbar. Click and drag the text box to the desired location and resize the box by using the handles on the sides and corners.

- 2. Click and drag over a passage of text to select it.
- **3.** To change the size or style of the text, click the Fonts button on the Keynote toolbar.
- 4. Select a font, style, and size, as shown in Figure 6-11.



To add a drop shadow behind the selected text, click the Drop Shadow button. (The button is rectangular, located in the uppermiddle section of the Font panel, and is marked with the letter T.)

- *5.* Close the Font panel after you're done customizing the font.
- **6.** To change the color of text (or any object), select the text and then click the Colors button on the Keynote toolbar.
- **7.** Use the Colors panel, as shown in Figure 6-12, to select a new color.



If you prefer to adjust color with sliders or specific numeric values rather than the circular color picker, click the Sliders button (the second button from the left) near the top of the Colors panel.

8. Close the Colors panel after you're done changing colors.



Figure 6-11: Customize text appearance in the Font window.



Figure 6-12: Colors are easy to change in Keynote.

Add Graphics to Presentations

- **1.** Open a Keynote presentation and a slide on which you want to draw some basic graphics.
- **2.** Click the Shapes button, as shown in Figure 6-13, and choose a shape that you want to draw.
- **3.** When the shape appears on the screen, click and drag the corner and side handles to change the shape size.
- 4. To insert a photo, choose Insert Choose.
- *5.* Browse to the image file that you want to insert. Select the image file and then click Insert.
- **6.** Click and drag the image to a new location, as shown in Figure 6-14.
- 7. Click and drag the corner handles of the image to resize it.



Don't make pictures too small because the people sitting in the back row must be able to see them, too.

8. If a shape or image blocks part of another image or object, select the image and choose Arrange⇔Bring Forward or Arrange⇔Send Backwards, as appropriate. Repeat until all graphics and objects on the slide are stacked in the proper order.

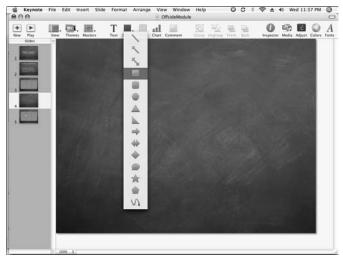


Figure 6-13: The Shapes menu helps you draw basic shapes.



Figure 6-14: Photos can be used to enhance your presentation.

Present a Keynote Presentation

1. Connect your Mac to a projector, if needed.



You may need to use a special VGA adapter between your Mac and the projector cable. Apple offers VGA adapters that allow you to connect most Macs to analog computer monitors or multimedia projectors.

- 2. Open the presentation that you want to play in Keynote.
- **3.** Click the first slide in the presentation so that it is selected.
- **4.** Click the Play button or choose View ⇒Play Slideshow to play the slideshow, as shown in Figure 6-15.
- **5.** Press Return, the spacebar, the right arrow key, or the mouse button to move to the next slide.
- 6. To move to the previous slide, press the left arrow key.
- 7. To end the presentation, press the Esc key.
- To export the presentation in a different format, choose Filet⇒Export.
- *9.* In the Export tab that appears, as shown in Figure 6-16, choose an export format and follow the instructions onscreen to export the presentation. The most useful formats include
 - QuickTime: Plays on any computer with QuickTime
 - **PowerPoint:** Exports a presentation that is compatible with Microsoft PowerPoint
 - Flash: Plays in most Web browsers
 - **iDVD**: Creates a DVD that can play in many video DVD players

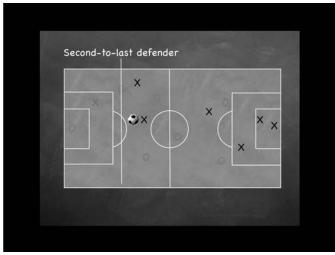


Figure 6-15: Use the mouse button or arrow keys to move through the slides.



Figure 6-16: Keynote can export presentations for QuickTime and PowerPoint.



Using Dashboard

Computers are said to be labor saving devices, yet it seems to take an awful lot of mouse clicks, menu commands, and keyboard inputs to get anything done. This is what makes computers less intuitive than, say, a car, where every important control is immediately at hand and critical information is within your peripheral view.

The engineers at Apple must have been thinking about computer usability problems, too. When they released OS X version 10.4 Tiger, they included a new tool — *Dashboard*. Like the instrument panel in your car, the OS X Dashboard puts key information and tools within easy reach. Dashboard isn't quite in peripheral view — if it was it would be in the way — but it is just a single mouse click away, and Dashboard doesn't affect your other applications.

This chapter shows you how to open Dashboard and how to add and remove Dashboard items, which are also called *widgets*. Dashboard widgets covered in this chapter include

- ➡ Weather
- ➡ Sticky Notes
- ➡ Web Clips
- 🗯 Flight Tracker
- Translation
- Unit Converter
- ➡ Movies

New in OS X Leopard is the ability to easily create your own widgets. The Photocast widget described in this chapter is one such build-your-own Dashboard widget.

- → Download New Dashboard Widgets80

Open Dashboard

- To open Dashboard, simply click the Dashboard button on the Dock. The screen dims slightly, and Dashboard widgets zoom into view, as shown in Figure 7-1. Dashboard can also be opened by two additional methods:
 - Double-click the Dashboard icon in the Applications folder.
 - Press F12 on your keyboard.
- **2.** To change the way Dashboard opens, open System Preferences and then click the Exposé & Spaces icon.
- **3.** To create a hot corner for Dashboard, select Dashboard in one of the Active Screen Corner menus. In Figure 7-2, the lower-right corner has been set to Dashboard. To open Dashboard, simply move the mouse pointer to the corresponding corner of the screen.
- **4.** To change the keyboard shortcut used for opening Dashboard, make a different selection in the Dashboard menu.



If you want to use a modifier key, such as \Re or Control, simply hold down that key (or keys) while making a selection in the Dashboard menu.



Dashboard can't be quit like other OS X applications. To close Dashboard, simply click a blank area of the screen. Although a black arrow remains under the Dashboard icon on the Dock, very little of your computer's resources are dedicated to Dashboard.

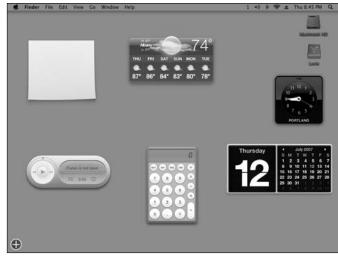


Figure 7-1: Click the Dashboard icon on the Dock to open Dashboard.

0	Expo	sé & Spaces			
Show All				9	
Exposé allows you to tempor on any window to bring it to he Dashboard. You can enal	the front. You	ur open wind can set a Das	hboard shortcut	to show or hi	
Active Screen Corners		spaces and se		on spaces.	
-			All Windows		\$
Start Screen Saver		1	Dashboard		•
Keyboard and Mouse Shortcuts (for more shortcu	t choices, press	Shift, Control, Optic	n, or Command	d)
All windows:	F9		-	•	
Application windows:	F10		-	•	
Desktop:	F11		-	•	
Dashboard:	F12		-	\$	

Add Items to Dashboard

- 1. Open Dashboard.
- **2.** Click the plus sign in the lower-left corner of the Dashboard screen. A list of widgets appears along the bottom of the screen, as shown in Figure 7-3.
- **3.** Click the arrow buttons on the far right or left of the list of widgets to scroll through the list.
- **4.** To add a widget, simply click the widget in the list. The new widget is plopped onto your Dashboard. In Figure 7-4, the Movies widget was added.
- **5.** Click and drag widgets to move them to new locations, as shown in Figure 7-4.
- **6.** To remove a widget from Dashboard, click the X button in the upper-left corner of the widget. You can always add the widget back later if you want.
- **7.** After you're done adding, moving, and removing widgets, click the X button in the lower-left corner of the screen, just above the horizontal list of widgets. The list disappears, and the X turns back into a plus sign.



You can click and drag widgets to new locations at any time; the widget list at the bottom of the screen need not be visible when moving widgets, only when adding and removing widgets.



Figure 7-3: Click the plus sign in the lower-left corner to display the widget list.



Figure 7-4: Widgets can be moved or deleted as needed.

Create Web Clip Widgets

- **1.** Open a Web page in Safari containing the item you want to place in a widget.
- **2.** When the page is loaded, choose File=>Open in Dashboard.



You can also click the Open This Page in Dashboard button on the Safari toolbar. The button looks like a dotted square with scissors. However, if the item is in a pop-up window, the Safari toolbar may not be visible, making it necessary to choose File=>Open in Dashboard.

- **3.** Click the general area of the page containing the item that you want to add to Dashboard. A clear box appears around the area.
- **4.** Click and drag the handles at the corners and sides of the box so that the box surrounds only the area that you want to add to Dashboard. In Figure 7-5, I'm selecting a picture and some text in a pop-up window.
- **5.** Click Add. A Web Clip containing the area is added to Dashboard.
- **6.** Open Dashboard and reposition the Web Clip, as shown in Figure 7-6.
- **7.** To remove a Web Clip from your Dashboard, open Dashboard and then click the plus sign in the lower-left corner of the screen. Click the Web Clip's close button to remove it.



Figure 7-5: Select the area that you want to add to Dashboard.



Figure 7-6: Web clips can be moved or closed like any other Dashboard widget.

Check Weather

- **1.** Open Dashboard. If the Weather widget isn't already part of your Dashboard, add it, as described earlier in this chapter.
- **2.** Click the *i* button in the lower-right corner of the Weather widget.
- **3.** In the City, State, or ZIP Code field, enter your city, state, or ZIP code, as shown in Figure 7-7.



If you live in a suburb of a larger city, make sure you enter the name of your suburb and not the big city nearby. For example, if you live in Aurora, Colorado, enter Aurora and not Denver. This ensures that your weather report is as accurate as possible for your specific location.

- **4.** Choose whether you want the temperature to display in Celsius (°C) or Fahrenheit (°F) in the Degrees menu.
- **5.** If you want the weather outlook to display daily low temperatures as well as daily highs, select Include Lows in 6-Day Forecast.
- **6.** Click Done and then check your weather outlook, as shown in Figure 7-8.
- 7. For a compact display of the Weather widget, click the sun or moon (depending on the time of day). The widget display gets smaller, like the upper widget in Figure 7-8. Click the sun or moon again to expand the display, like the lower widget in Figure 7-8.



If you want to monitor the weather in multiple locations, open multiple occurrences of the Weather widget by simply adding the Weather widget again, as described earlier in this chapter. You can then set each widget to a different geographic location.



Figure 7-7: Set your location as specifically as possible.



Figure 7-8: Weather is one of Dashboard's more useful widgets.



Leave Sticky Notes

- **1.** Open Dashboard. If the Stickies widget isn't already part of your Dashboard, add it, as described earlier in this chapter.
- **2.** Click the *i* button in the lower-right corner of the Stickies widget.
- **3.** Choose a paper color, font, and font size, as shown in Figure 7-9.



For best results, keep the Font Size menu set to Auto. When the size is set to auto, the text side adjusts automatically when you type notes.

- 4. Click Done.
- **5.** To compose a note, simply click the Stickies widget and start typing, as shown in Figure 7-10.
- **6.** To delete the text on a note, click and drag over text with the mouse to select it and then press Delete on your keyboard.



If you want to save text in a Sticky Note, select the text and then press \Re +C on the keyboard to copy it. Open another program (such as TextEdit) and then press \Re +V to paste the text into that program. You can then save the text with that program. You can't save text by using the Stickies widget.



Figure 7-9: Customize the paper color and font.



Figure 7-10: Type quick notes with the Stickies widget.

Track Flights

- **1.** Open Dashboard. If the Flight Tracker widget isn't already part of your Dashboard, add it, as described earlier in this chapter.
- **2.** If you want to track flights for a specific airline, choose the airline in the Airline menu.
- **3.** Select the departure city in the Depart City menu, as shown in Figure 7-11.
- **4.** Select the destination in the Arrive City menu, as shown in Figure 7-11.



If you know the three letter airport code (for example, LAX for Los Angeles International Airport or MSP for Minneapolis-St. Paul International Airport) for either city, click in the relevant menu and type the code.

- 5. Click Find Flights.
- **6.** Review the list of flights matching your results, as shown in Figure 7-12.
- **7.** To perform another search, click the arrow next to the Find Flights button.



Flight Tracker automatically refreshes its data every time you open Dashboard. If you plan to track a flight in the near future, set up Flight Tracker to monitor those flights beforehand.



Figure 7-11: Enter the arrival and departure cities, and specify an airline if desired.



Figure 7-12: Flight Tracker gives up-to-the-minute flight status.



Translate Foreign Languages

- **1.** Open Dashboard. If the Translation widget isn't already part of your Dashboard, add it, as described earlier in this chapter.
- **2.** Select languages in the From and To menus to decide how the translation is made.
- **3.** Enter a phrase, including punctuation, in the From field. A translation appears automatically in the To field, as shown in Figure 7-13.



You can copy and paste text into the Translation widget from other programs or Web pages.

Convert Units of Measure

- 1. Open Dashboard. If the Unit Converter widget isn't already part of your Dashboard, add it, as described earlier in this chapter.
- **2.** Choose a unit you want to convert in the Convert menu. You can choose Weight, Volume, Energy, Currency, Time, and many other units of measure.
- **3.** Select a specific unit of measure in the menu on the left and then enter a value, as shown in Figure 7-14.
- **4.** Choose a specific unit of measure in the right menu. This unit should be the one to which you want to convert the original value.



Figure 7-13: Quickly translate phrases to other common languages.

dia_		76		-0
Convert	Weight		÷	
Pound (US)	÷)	Kilogram	÷
451		1	204.57016	

Figure 7-14: The Unit Converter can convert almost anything.

Check Movie Times

- **1.** Open Dashboard. If the Movies widget isn't already part of your Dashboard, add it, as I describe earlier in this chapter.
- 2. Click in the Movies widget to enlarge the window size.
- **3.** Click the *i* icon in the lower-left corner of the Movies widget and enter your ZIP code, as shown in Figure 7-15.
- 4. Click Done to return to the main Movies window.
- **5.** Click the name of a movie under Movie Theaters to view a description of the movie. A list of local theaters that are showing the movie appears to the right.
- **6.** Click a theater in the list to view a list of show times, as shown in Figure 7-16.
- **7.** To view a trailer for the movie, click the Trailer icon in the lower-left corner.
- **8.** To purchase tickets online using Fandango.com, click Buy Tickets in the lower-left corner.



By default, all movies and show times are displayed for the current day. To view a different day, click Today in the upper-right corner of the Movies widget and choose a different day from the menu that appears.



Figure 7-15: Localize the Movies widget for your area.

Movies Theaters			Today \$
1408	PG-13	Pix Theatre 3	5:00pm
Captivity	R		7:30pm
Evan Almighty	PG		
Evening	PG-13		
Fantastic Four: Rise of	PG		
Harry Potter and the Or	PG-13		
		 st. John Cusack, Samuel L. Jackson McCormack Horror Renowned horror novelist Mike E Cusack) only believes what he ca own two eyes. After a string of b discrediting paranormal events in infamous haunted houses and g 	Enslin (John in see with his estsellers h the most raveyards
Trailer O Buy Tickets O		around the world, he scoffs at th an afterlife. He checks into suite notorious Dolphin Hotel for his la Ten Nights in Haunted Hotel Roo	1408 of the atest project,

Figure 7-16: Check movie descriptions, theaters, and show times.

Download New Dashboard Widgets

- 1. Open Dashboard and then click the plus sign in the lower-left corner to open the list of widgets along the bottom of the screen.
- **2.** Click Manage Widgets in the lower-left corner, just above the widget list.
- **3.** In the Widget Manager window that appears, as shown in Figure 7-17, click More Widgets.
- **4.** In the Apple Web site that appears, as shown in Figure 7-18, browse the extensive list of available widgets.



Make sure you read the terms of use for any widget before you download. Widgets listed as Freeware can be downloaded for free, but you should still click the More Info link if one is available. The More Info link also usually contains special installation instructions.

- *5.* After you find a widget you want to install, click Download.
- 6. Click OK to save the widget to your desktop.
- **7.** After the download is complete, double-click the extracted Widget file to install the widget. Follow the onscreen instructions (unique to each widget) to finish installation.



Figure 7-17: Click More Widgets to see what's available.



Figure 7-18: Apple's Web site offers literally thousands of widgets.

Part 3 Going Online with Your Mac



"My spam filter checks the recipient address, httplinks, and any writing that panders to postmodern English romanticism with conceits to 20th-century graphic narrative."

Chapter 8: Sending E-Mail and Browsing the Internet	83
Go Online with Safari	
Install Firefox	86
Browse the Web with Firefox	86
Bookmark Your Favorite Web Pages	88
Search with the Google Widget	88
Configure an E-Mail Account	89
Compose and Send E-Mail	90
Download and Read E-Mail	91
Adjust Mail Settings	92
Create a To Do Item from an E-Mail	
Subscribe to an RSS Feed	94

Chapter 9: Using a .Mac Account95

Create a .Mac Account	6
Backup Files97	7
Publish Photos Online	8
Synchronize Computers through	
a .Mac Account100	0
Read and Send .Mac E-Mail10	1

Chapter 10: Blogging and Web Designing with iWeb	103
Create a Web Page	104
Upload the Web Page to a Web Server	
Create a Weblog	107
Publish Your Weblog Online	
Record a Podcast	
Chapter 11: Chatting on Your Mac	111
Set Up iChat	112
Chat using iChat	
Chat using iChat Sharing Your Screen with iChat	
Sharing Your Screen with iChat	114
Sharing Your Screen with iChat Use Google Talk with iChat	114 115
Sharing Your Screen with iChat	114 115 116

Sending E-Mail and Browsing the Internet

Personal computers have been available since the 1970s, but in the early years they were mainly used by businesses, gamers, and hardcore computer geeks. With the advent of the World Wide Web in the 1990s, more people came to see personal computers as necessities. Today the computer is an indispensable tool for communication, information, and entertainment.

Your Macintosh is ready to communicate, entertain, and retrieve information as soon as you take it out of the box. It comes with all the software applications you need to send and receive e-mail, browse the Web, or download multimedia. Your Mac probably even comes with the hardware needed to connect to the Internet in the form of a network adapter and AirPort (AirPort is optional on some models). If you need a modem for dial-up Internet, Apple sells one that plugs into your Mac's USB port.

This chapter shows you how to get started with e-mail and Web browsing. In addition to the applications that come with OS X, this chapter also shows you how to download and use *Firefox*, a popular third-party Web browser application.



Before you can use e-mail and the Internet, you must have an Internet service account. These accounts are provided by Internet Service Providers (ISPs), of which many are probably in your area. If you don't already have Internet service, check with your telephone or cable company to see what services they offer or look in the phone book under Internet Service. Your ISP may provide specific instructions for connecting its service.

Chapter 8

- → Download and Read E-Mail91
- → Adjust Mail Settings......92
- → Create a To Do Item from an E-Mail93
- → Subscribe to an RSS Feed94

Go Online with Safari

- 1. Launch the Safari Web browser by clicking the Safari icon on the Dock or by double-clicking its icon in the Applications folder.
- **2.** Type a Web address a *Uniform Resource Locator* (URL) in the address bar, as shown in Figure 8-1, and then press Return to visit the address.
- **3.** Use the four buttons on the Safari toolbar to navigate Web pages. From left-to-right the buttons are
 - **Back:** Click the Back button to return to the previously-viewed Web page.
 - Forward: If you click the Back button, you can click the Forward button to return forward.
 - **Reload:** Use this button to reload a page. The Reload button is especially helpful if a wireless connection drops momentarily and the page fails to completely load.
 - **Bookmark:** Click this to bookmark a Web page. You can easily return to the page again by selecting it from the Bookmarks menu on the menu bar.
- **4.** To add a bookmark to the Bookmark bar (located just below the Safari toolbar and address bar), go to the page you want to bookmark and then click the Bookmark button.
- **5.** Type a different name for the bookmark, if desired. The name shown appears on the bookmark.
- **6.** Choose Bookmarks Bar in the location menu, as shown in Figure 8-2, and then click Add.
- **7.** To change the size of text on the screen, open the View menu and choose to make text either bigger or smaller.

84



Figure 8-1: The Safari Web browser comes pre-installed on every Mac.



Figure 8-2: Bookmark pages that you want to visit regularly.

- 8. Choose Safaric>Preferences.
- **9.** On the General pane, enter the URL for the page you want to use as your home page, as shown in Figure 8-3.



The *home page* is the Web page that opens when you first launch Safari. To use the current Web page as your home page, click Set to Current Page.

- 10. Click the Security button to open Security preferences.
- *11.* Choose Never under Cookies if you don't want to accept cookies from Web sites.
- **12.** Close the Preferences window after you're done adjusting Safari preferences.



Although cookies may be used to track your Web browsing habits, the real risks are minimal. Some Web pages may not function correctly when cookies are disabled.

13. To browse anonymously, choose Safaris>Private Browsing.



Private browsing stops Safari from remembering which Web pages you've visited. This setting is especially valuable if you're using Safari on a public computer, such as in a library or school.

- **14.** To return to a Web page in History, choose a page from the History menu, or click the Bookmarks button on the far-left side of the Bookmarks bar and then choose History, as shown in Figure 8-4. Click a page in the History to view it.
- 15. To clear the history, choose History=>Clear History.

000	General	
General Appearance Bookmarks Tab		
Default Web Browser:	🕘 Safari	\$
New windows open with:	Home Page	\$
Home page:	http://www.dummies.com/	
	Set to Current Page	
Remove history items:	After one month	\$
Save downloaded files to:	Downloads	\$
Remove download list items:	Manually	\$
	Open "safe" files after download "Safe" files include movies, pictures, sour PDF and text documents, and disk image and other archives.	nds,
Open links from applications:	in a new window in a new tab in the current wind This applies to links from Mail, iChat, etc.	22.200

Figure 8-3: Set your home page here.

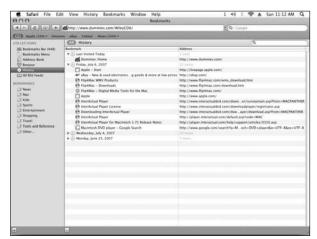


Figure 8-4: Safari remembers Web pages that you visited in recent days.

Install Firefox

- Use any Web browser (like Safari) to visit www.getfirefox.com.
- **2.** Follow the instructions on the Mozilla Web site to download Firefox.
- 3. When the installer download is finished, double-click the Desktop icon for the disk image (the icon has the . dmg file name extension) to extract and mount the disk image.
- 4. Read and accept the license agreement when it appears.
- **5.** When you see the Firefox application window, as shown in the upper-left corner of Figure 8-5, open your Applications folder and then click and drag the Firefox icon from the Firefox window to the Applications folder.



After Firefox is copied to the Applications folder, you can delete the downloaded Firefox disk image.



86

To access Firefox more easily, add it to the OS X Dock. See Chapter 1 for more on adding items to the Dock.

Browse the Web with Firefox

- 1. Launch Firefox from the Applications folder.
- **2.** Type a Web address in the address bar, as shown in Figure 8-6.



Figure 8-5: Copy Firefox into your Applications folder.



Figure 8-6: Type a URL in the address bar to visit a Web site.

- 3. Use the navigation buttons on the Firefox toolbar to browse Web pages. From left-to-right the buttons are
 - Back: Click the Back button to return to the previouslyviewed Web page.
 - Forward: If you click the Back button, you can click the Forward button to return forward.
 - Reload: Use this button to reload a page. The Reload button is especially helpful if a wireless connection drops momentarily and the page fails to load completely.
 - Stop: Click this button to stop loading the current Web page.
 - Home: Click the Home button to quickly return to your home page.



Click and hold the Back and Forward buttons to reveal a longer list of visited pages.

- 4. Choose Firefox Preferences.
- In the Main tab, enter the URL for your desired home 5. page, as shown in Figure 8-7, or click Use Current Page to set the current Web page as your home page.
- 6. Click Check Now to see if Firefox is your default browser. If not, you may set Firefox as the default when you're prompted to do so.
- 7. To view your browsing history, choose Got History. Use the History pane on the left side of the Firefox window, as shown in Figure 8-8, to browse previously visited Web sites.

000	Main		\bigcirc
Main Tabs Content F	eds Privacy Security Advanced	1	
Startup			
When Firefox starts:	Show my home page		÷
Home Page: http:/	/www.dummies.com/		
	Use Current Page Use	Bookmark Re	estore to Default
Downloads			
Show the Downlo	ads window when downloading	a file	
Close it when	all downloads are finished		
🕑 Save files to 🗐 D	esktop		Choose
🔘 Always ask me w	ere to save files		
System Defaults			
Always check to :	ee if Firefox is the default brow	wser on startup	Check Now
(?)			
Figuro 8-7: Cot Fire	fox's home name		





Figure 8-8: Choose God History to open the History pane.

Bookmark Your Favorite Web Pages

- 1. In Firefox, open the Web page that you want to bookmark.
- 2. Choose Bookmarks >Bookmark This Page.
- **3.** Type a simple name for the bookmark in the Bookmark tab that appears, as shown in Figure 8-9.
- **4.** If you want the bookmark to appear on the Bookmarks toolbar, choose Bookmarks Toolbar in the Create In menu, as shown in Figure 8-9.

_
\sim
IGN
\mathbf{U}

To delete or update old bookmarks, choose Bookmarks: $\hfill \mbox{Manage Bookmarks}$

Search with the Google Widget

- **1.** Add the Google widget to Dashboard, as I describe in Chapter 7.
- **2.** Open Dashboard and type a search query in the Google widget, as shown in Figure 8-10.
- **3.** Press Return to begin the search. Your default Web browser opens and displays a list of results.



Your Web browser doesn't need to be open before you use the Google widget. The browser launches automatically when you begin the search.



Figure 8-9: Bookmark your favorite Web pages in seconds.

Google Q barbary coast pirates

Figure 8-10: Use the Google widget to perform fast Web searches.

Configure an E-Mail Account

- **1.** Obtain an e-mail account from your ISP, an e-mail account provider, or .Mac. See Chapter 9 for more on getting and using a .Mac account.
- **2.** Launch Mail from the OS X Dock or from the Applications folder. Make sure your computer is connected to the Internet.
- **3.** If you have a .Mac e-mail account, enter your .Mac account name and password when you're prompted to do so. If you have a different e-mail account, choose Mail⇔Preferences.
- **4.** Click the Accounts icon in Mail Preferences and then click the Create an Account button (it looks like a plus sign) in the lower-left corner of the Preferences window.
- *5.* Enter your name, e-mail address, and password and then click Continue.
- **6.** Choose the account type and enter the incoming server address (these should be provided with your e-mail account details). Also provide a description and server password, as shown in Figure 8-11.
- **7.** Click Continue and then choose whether your server requires SSL authentication. Click Continue again.
- **8.** Enter the address for your outgoing mail server. If the server requires authentication, check Use Authentication and enter the username and password, as shown in Figure 8-12.
- *9.* Click Continue, verify the account summary that appears, and then click Continue again. Click Done when you see the Conclusion screen.



If Mail is unable to verify or create the account because you enter an invalid address, username, or password, you're asked to repeat the necessary steps. Addresses, usernames, and passwords are provided by the e-mail service provider.



Figure 8-11: Choose the type of mail account you wish to create.

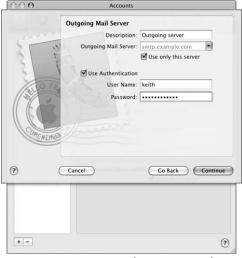


Figure 8-12: Some outgoing mail servers require authentication.



Compose and Send E-Mail

- **1.** Open the Mail application and click the New Message button on the toolbar.
- **2.** In the message window that appears, type the e-mail address of the recipient in the To: field. If you aren't sure of the address, click Address and choose a name from your Address Book, as shown in Figure 8-13.



When you receive an e-mail message, you can add the sender to your Address Book by selecting the message and choosing Message=>Add Sender to Address Book.

- **3.** Type a subject for your message in the Subject: field. The subject should be descriptive so that the recipient can easily identify the topic of your e-mail.
- **4.** Compose your message, as shown in Figure 8-14. The mail composition window works much like a word processor. Other composition options include
 - Text styles: Use the Fonts and Colors buttons to change the appearance of text in your e-mail.
 - **Carbon copies:** To include a third party in on your e-mail, enter another address in the Cc: field. You can enter multiple addresses in the To: and Cc: fields.
 - File attachments: Click Attach and browse to a picture or other file that you want to send with the e-mail. Try to keep attachment sizes small (usually 1MB or less) and keep in mind that some people can't receive attachments.
- *5.* After you're done composing, click Send. The message is sent.



Figure 8-13: Look up e-mail addresses in your Address Book.

	Э				C	inner			\bigcirc
(\mathbf{T})	0			\bigcirc	\bigcirc				
Send	Chat	Attach	Address	Fonts	Colors	Lists	Save As Draft	Photo Browser	Show Stationery
	To:	Kei	ith Under	dahl					
	Cc:								
≣▼	Subject:	Dinne	r						
Howdy,									
How doe	es pizza s	ound for	r dinner tor	night? We	can mee	t at Pizza	King at 7:00. Let	me know if this w	orks for you!
-Keith									

Figure 8-14: Click Send after you're done composing your e-mail.



Download and Read E-Mail

- 1. Launch Mail and make sure your computer is connected to the Internet.
- **2.** If mail doesn't download automatically, click the Get Mail button on the Mail toolbar.
- **3.** Review the list of downloaded e-mail in the Inbox. Unread e-mail is marked with a blue dot to the left of the message.
- **4.** Click a message to view it in the Preview pane near the bottom of the window, as shown in Figure 8-15.

a	
(\bigcirc))

To view an e-mail message in a separate window, double-click the message in the Inbox.

- **5.** After you're done reading an e-mail message, you can do one of several things with it:
 - **Reply:** Select a message and click Reply to compose and send a reply to the message.
 - **Delete:** Click the Delete button on the toolbar to delete the message.
 - Junk: If the message is spam or junk mail, select the message and click Junk. This trains Mail to recognize and trash junk mail.
 - Organize: To organize e-mails that you want to keep, choose Mailbox⇔New Mailbox, type a name for the mailbox, and click OK. Click and drag messages to the new mailbox, as shown in Figure 8-16.

000	Inbox (2 messages, 1 unrea	a)		\odot
	(0 8) (* * +			~
Get Mail	Delete Junk Reply Reply All Forward	New Message	Note To Do	
MAILBOXES	From Subject		Date Received	
🖨 Inbox 🔹 🕦		ial has started		12:06 PM
Drafts	Keith Underdahl Re: Dinner		Today	12:15 PM
Sent				
		0		
	From: Keith Underdahl Subject: Re: Dinner			E.
	Date: July 8, 2007 12:15:53 PM PDT			
	To: Keith Underdahl <kunderdahl@mac.com< td=""><td>1></td><td></td><td></td></kunderdahl@mac.com<>	1>		
	Sounds great! Are you buying?			
	-Keith			
	Original Message From: "Keith Underdahl"		ac.com>	
	To: "Keith Underdah!" <keith@theunderdahls.com> Sent: Sunday, July 08, 2007 12:10 PM</keith@theunderdahls.com>			
	Subject: Dinner			
	Howdy,			
	How does pizza sound for dinner tonight? We can works for you!	n meet at Pizza Kir	ng at 7:00. Let me k	now if this
	-Keith			
+ 🔺 🔅 -				

Figure 8-15: Use the Preview pane to quickly read e-mail.

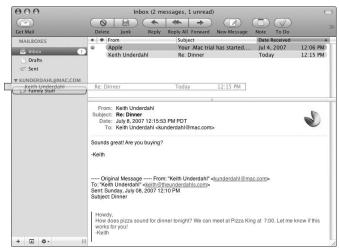


Figure 8-16: Organize messages into sub-mailboxes.

Adjust Mail Settings

- 1. Open the Mail application and choose Mail Preferences.
- 2. On the General tab, choose how often you want Mail to check for new messages. In Figure 8-17, Mail was configured to check for mail every 15 minutes.
- **3.** Click the Accounts button, click Mailbox Behaviors and choose how long you want to wait before deleted messages are emptied from the Trash. The default interval is one week.
- **4.** Click the Junk Mail button and adjust junk mail filtering settings.



When you first start using Mail, you should leave the junk mail filter in Training mode. If you set it to Automatic mode, Mail may inadvertently junk otherwise valid e-mail.

- **5.** Click Fonts & Colors and choose default fonts and colors for e-mail composition and viewing.
- **6.** Click the Composing button. If you participate in e-mail lists that require plain text, choose Plain Text in the Message Format menu, as shown in Figure 8-18.



If you want to reply to rich text messages in rich text format, select Use the Same Message Format as the Original Message.

7. Close the Preferences window after you're done making settings adjustments.

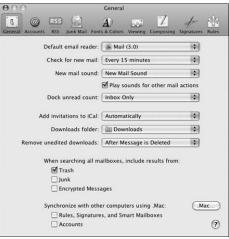


Figure 8-17: Decide how often you want Mail to check for new messages.

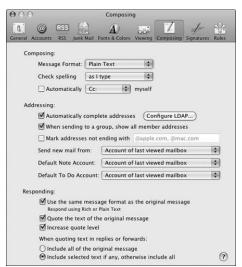


Figure 8-18: Mail can be configured for plain text mail.

Create a To Do Item from an E-Mail

1. Open Apple Mail and click To Do on the toolbar.



If the To Do list doesn't open automatically, click your e-mail account under To Do in the sidebar on the left side of the Mail application window.

- **2.** Click in the Title field and enter a descriptive title, as shown in Figure 8-19.
- **3.** Enter a date in the Date Due field.



If you have a two-button mouse, right-click the Date Due field and choose a day. Otherwise, simply enter a calendar date in the Date Due field. You can also choose Reveal in iCal to display To Do items in iCal.

- **4.** Click Priority and select a priority level for the item from the menu that appears.
- **5.** To set up an alarm for the item, click the Alarm icon and set a date and time for a reminder alarm. In Figure 8-19, two alarms have been set.
- **6.** When an Alarm message appears, as shown in Figure 8-20, note the reminder and then click the Close button to dismiss the Alarm.
- **7.** After you complete the To Do item, place a check mark next to it in the Apple Mail To Do list.

		kun	derdahl@mac.com - kur	nderdahl@mac.com	(1 to do)			
0	0	816	dbb (2) (1) (9		
Get Mail		ners Reply	Reply All Forward New M		De		Search	
MAILBOXES	✓ Title		Date Due	Date Completed	Priority	Calendar	14.	Notes
C inter (C	Turf Task	Force Meeting	Tomorrow	No Date	Medium	calendar	2	1024 100
© Iblos © Duth © Duth © Sent OTHER ♥ 50 De ♥ 50 DE		For Contraction of Co	1000100	NO LORE	MEULIN		O Alarm M or at O Alarm M th	date # / 8/2007 2:30 PM

Figure 8-19: Set up a To Do item in Mail.



Figure 8-20: Set up an alarm.



Subscribe to an RSS Feed

1. Look for an RSS (Really Simple Syndication) icon on a Web site that you regularly visit.



Many Web sites, including www . dummies.com, have a Sign Up for RSS Feeds link. Click this link to sign up for feeds.

- **2.** Click the RSS icon to review the feed, as shown in Figure 8-21.
- **3.** To sign up for the feed, click Subscribe in Mail under Actions on the right side of the screen.
- **4.** To view updates, launch Mail and click the name of the feed in the Sidebar, as shown in Figure 8-22.
- **5.** To unsubscribe from a feed, click the feed in the Mail Sidebar to select it. Click the Actions button at the bottom of the sidebar (the button has a toothed gear icon on it) and choose Delete from the menu that appears. Click Delete to confirm the deletion.



You can also subscribe to RSS feeds directly from within Apple Mail. Launch Mail and choose File=>Add RSS Feeds and then browse to a feed that interests you.



The steps shown here assume that you're using Safari as your Web browser.

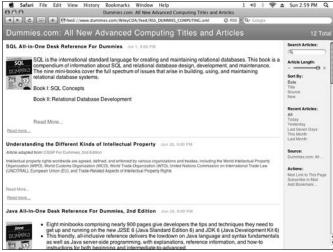


Figure 8-21: Dummies.com is one of many web sites offering RSS feeds.

🗱 Mail File Edit	View Mailbox				1 40	1 🔶 1	▲ Sun 3:02 PM	
000			dummies.com – RSS					
	(O E)	(+ + + - +		$\langle \nabla \rangle$	9			
et Mail	Dalete Juck	Reply Reply All Forward	New Message Note	Te Do			Search	
MAILBOXES	 Subject 			Date Received		_		-
🕾 Inbox 🔘								
Drafts								
eff Sent								
OTHER								
√ To Do								
V On My Mac								
🖌 kunderdahl@ma 🔘								
III RSS								
MI www.dumme. 00								
UNDERDAHLEMAC.COM								
I Family Stuff								
Do variety stati								

Figure 8-22: Read RSS feed updates in Mail.

Using a .Mac Account

One of the coolest things about the Internet is that anyone can publish photos, blogs, and other stuff for the whole world to see. If you'd like your own online home page, you're going to need some online real estate on which to build it. Many different companies offer online server space, but such servers are often costly or difficult to use.

Apple offers online server space, too, and it's much easier to use than many other online services. The Apple online service is .Mac, and you can use .Mac for both public and private purposes. On the public side, you can use .Mac to publish photos, videos, calendars, and Web pages, and on the private side, you can use .Mac to archive important files and data so that it can be easily retrieved from anywhere in the world. .Mac also helps you create your own blogs and podcasts, set up personalized e-mail accounts, and more.

A .Mac account costs about \$100 per year. This is close to what other online server space companies charge, but with .Mac you get user friendliness for no extra charge. You can also try .Mac for free for 60 days. This chapter shows you how to get started with a .Mac account and how to start using some of the most popular .Mac features.

Chapter Get ready to . . . Get ready to . . . Create a .Mac Account 96 Backup Files 97 Publish Photos Online 98 Synchronize Computers through a .Mac Account 100

Create a .Mac Account

- Visit Apple's .Mac Web site at www.apple.com/ dotmac.
- **2.** Click the link to either sign up for a free trial or sign up immediately for an account.
- **3.** Follow the onscreen instructions to create your account, as shown in Figure 9-1. Choose your Member Name carefully because you can't change it later.



If the Member Name you choose is already taken, the .Mac Web site will prompt you to enter a different user name.

4. Print your account information when prompted to do so. This information — including server addresses — is important and is needed later.



The e-mail address, e-mail server address, and Simple Mail Transport Protocol (SMTP) server address can be used to set up almost any e-mail program to use your .Mac account.

- **5.** Log in to .Mac when you're prompted to do so, as shown in Figure 9-2.
- **6.** After you're done using .Mac, click the Log Out link in the upper-right corner of the screen.
- 7. To log in to your .Mac account from any Internetconnected computer, simply visit www.apple.com, click the .Mac link, and then click the Log In link in the upper-right corner.



If you access .Mac from a computer other than your own (especially a public computer), don't allow the browser to remember your password and make sure that you log out when you're done.

0.0	Apple .M	fac Signup		
- C 2 + @ http:	://www.mac.com/WebObjects	s/Signup.woa/wa/trial?aff=con@ * Q+ Google		
Apple (45) * Amazon ellay	Yahoo! News (126) *			
.mac		Sign up for a 60 day free	e trial	
Please provide the following info Mac is available to those who an	rmation to sign up for your .Mac acc e 13 years of age or older.	ount.		
Personal Information				
First Name		Last Name		
Keith		Underdahl		
Current Email Address				
keith@underdahl.com				
Country		Select your preferred language for communications.		
United States		English	0	
Member Name and Passwor	d			
Member Name and .Mac Mail Address	(3-20 characters)	Password (6-32 characters)		
keithunderdahl	#mac.com	8		
Your member name becomes the unio as your HamePage URL. You cannot o account is established.	ue part of your Mac Mail address as well hange your member name after your	Password (confirm)	_	
Verification Information				
This is required to reset your passwo	id should you forget it.	Date of Birth		
	 	Month Day 1		
Password Question (e.g. What is my	mother's market name?)	Password Answer (e.g. Smith)		

Figure 9-1: Choose your Member Name carefully.



Figure 9-2: Log in to your new .Mac account.

Backup Files

- 1. Visit www.apple.com/dotmac and click the .Mac Log In link to log in to your .Mac account.
- **2.** Click the iDisk link and then enter your .Mac username and password again to log in to iDisk.



Don't append @mac.com to your username when logging in to iDisk.

3. In the list of iDisk folders that appears, as shown in Figure 9-3, double-click the folder to which you want to upload files.



To create a subfolder, click New Folder and then type a name for the new folder. When the new folder is created, double-click it to open it.

- **4.** When you're in the proper folder, click Upload.
- **5.** In the Select a File to Upload dialog box, click Choose a File.
- **6.** Use the Finder to locate a file you want to upload, as shown in Figure 9-4. Click a file to select it and then click Choose.
- **7.** In the Select a File to Upload dialog box, click Upload. After the file is done uploading, it appears in the list of files on iDisk.



To delete a file from iDisk, select the file on iDisk and then click the Delete link in the far-right column. The Delete link is a circle with a slash. To download a file, click the Download link, which is the down-pointing arrow in the far-right column. Downloaded files remain on iDisk until you delete them.

.Mac -	iDisk	
Back/Forward Dick Home	iDisk	New Folder Upload
Name	Date Modified	Sze
About your iDisk.rtf	1/10/2006 10:23 PM	63 KB 0
► 🗊 Backup	9/20/2006 #36 PM	85 <u>0</u> 850
▼ [] Documenta	9/20/2006 8:36 PM	
► 🖾 Library	9/20/2006 8:36 PM	
► 🗊 Movies	9/20/2006 8:36 PM	
► [] Music	9/20/2006 8:36 PM	
D Pictures	9/20/2006 # 36 PM	**
► [] Public	9/20/2006 8:36 PM	**
► []] Sites	9/20/2006 8:36 PM	1.00
► 🗊 Software	4/23/2006 10:45 PM	
() English (B) Used (0), 2	5 MB available	Storage Settlegs

Figure 9-3: Double-click the folder to which you want to upload files.



Figure 9-4: Browse to the file that you want to upload.

Publish Photos Online

- **1.** Log in to .Mac and then open iDisk, as described in the preceding section.
- 2. Double-click the Pictures folder to open it.
- 3. In the Pictures folder, click Upload.



If you want to share only certain files in your iDisk Pictures folder, create a subfolder, as described in the preceding section, and upload the pictures you want to share to that subfolder.

- **4.** In the Select a File to Upload dialog box, click Choose a File.
- **5.** Use the Finder to locate a picture you want to share, as shown in Figure 9-5. Click a file to select it and then click Choose.
- **6.** In the Select a File to Upload dialog box, click Upload. After the file is done uploading, it appears in the list of files on iDisk.
- **7.** Repeat Steps 3–6 until all the pictures you want to share are uploaded.
- 8. Close iDisk after you're done uploading files.
- *9.* In your .Mac account, click the My Pages link and then click the Photo Album tab.
- *10.* Browse through the available photo album themes, as shown in Figure 9-6.
- 11. Click a theme to select it.

98

	(◀ ►) [II • ■ □ () Yellowstone Q search	1 S
Let forward Buck A	Dat. 9.554301.jpg 10.5547 10.554 10.554 10.5547 10.554 10.554 10.554 10.554 10.554 10.554 10.554 10.554 10.554 10.554 10.554 10.554 10.554 10.554 10.55 10.554 10.55 10.55 10.55 10.55 10.55 10.55 10.55 10.55 10.55 10.55 10.55 10.55 10.55 10.55	B () her Falder Upland Sav
(2) English 1	Used 1N, 25 MB available	Storage Settlings

Figure 9-5: Select pictures to share.



Figure 9-6: Choose a theme for your online photo album.

- **12.** Select the folder containing the pictures you want to share, as shown in Figure 9-7. If the pictures are in a subfolder, make sure you select that subfolder.
- 13. Click Choose when the proper folder is selected.
- **14.** Enter an album name and description in the screen that appears.
- *15.* Type a description or caption under each picture, if desired.



If you don't want a particular photo to appear in the album, deselect Show on that picture's thumbnail.

- *16.* Scroll to the bottom of the album screen. If you want a view counter to appear in the album, select Show by the counter. You can also choose to show a Send Me a Message link, if you want.
- **17.** Click Preview near the top of the screen to preview the photo album as it will appear to visitors. If you want to make further changes, click Edit.
- *18.* When you're ready to publish the album, click Publish near the top of the screen. A Web page appears displaying the Web address for your photo album.
- *19.* Click the Web address to open the photo album, as shown in Figure 9-8.
- **20.** Copy the Web address and send it to friends, family, and anyone else with whom you want to share the album.



Click a picture's thumbnail to view the full-quality image. Click Start Slideshow to view a slideshow of your images in a new browser window.

Solect a bidler containing the images you want to appear in the Graphite Abure.	E: Hom	ePage	Honsfage Groups	iCards Help Log	Choose a folder	2
	Select a folder con	taining the images you want to	appear in the Graphite Alb	an,		1
9 OScha33.pg	C.02		05cba03.pg 05cba04.pg 05cba07.pg 05cba27.pg 05cba26.pg 05cba28.pg 05cba28.pg 05cba29.pg 05cba29.pg 05cba30.pg 05cba31.pg			
Laum how to access your Disk to add new tiles for sharing.	1 La 10	am how to access your iDisk add new Nies for sharing.	Θ	Cancel	Choose	

Figure 9-7: Select the folder containing pictures for your online photo album.



Figure 9-8: Your published photo album can be viewed by anyone on the Internet.

Synchronize Computers through a .Mac Account

- **1.** Open System Preferences and then click the .Mac icon to open .Mac preferences.
- **2.** Enter your .Mac member name and password on the Sign In screen, as shown in Figure 9-9.



Do not append @mac.com to your .Mac Member Name.

- 3. Click Sync to open the Synchronization options.
- **4.** Place a check mark next to Synchronize with .Mac, as shown in Figure 9-10.
- **5.** Choose whether you want synchronization to happen automatically, manually, or at specific intervals. In Figure 9-10, synchronizations happen automatically.
- *6.* Place a check mark next to the items you want to synchronize.
- **7.** If you chose Manual or Specific Interval synchronization, click Sync Now.
- **8.** Repeat the above steps on other computers that you wish to synchronize through .Mac.



If you receive an error message on other computers that they're not registered to synchronize through .Mac, click Advanced in the .Mac System Preferences window and then click Register this Computer.

Show All	.Mac
.Mac is the only online set to the Internet.	rvice that seamlessly extends your Mac experience
Are you a .Mac member? Sign into your account to set up .Mac on	Try .Mac for free. Sign up now and experience .Mac for 60
this computer. Member Name: kunderdahl	days at no charge.
Password:	

Figure 9-9: Enter your .Mac member name and password.

	.Mac	6
Show All		٩
Jinac to the	s the only online service that seamless Internet. Account Sync iDisk Back To My	
Synchronize with .Mae	c: Manually +	Sync Now
🗌 🎯 Bookmarks		n
Calendars		
🗆 📔 Contacts		
🗌 🌚 Dashboard W	Vidgets	
Dock Items		
🗌 🕅 Keychains		U
🗌 🎩 Mail Account	ts	
🗌 퉳 Mail Rules, S	ignatures, and Smart Mailboxes	<u>*</u>
Status: Registering con	mputer	
Show status in menu	bar	Advanced

Figure 9-10: Choose how and what you want to synchronize.

Read and Send .Mac E-Mail

1. Log in to .Mac and then click the Mail link.



You can log in to .Mac and check your .Mac e-mail by using almost any Web browser on any computer connected to the Internet. The Apple Mail program (and some other e-mail clients) can also be used to access a .Mac e-mail account. See Chapter 8 for more on using Apple Mail.

- **2.** To download e-mail, click the Get Mail button near the top of the .Mac Inbox, as shown in Figure 9-11.
- **3.** To read a message, click it in the Inbox to open the message, as shown in Figure 9-12.
- **4.** Use the controls at the top of the screen to Delete, Reply, or Forward the message.
- *5.* To return to the Inbox, click Mail in the upper-left corner.
- **6.** Click Compose to compose a new e-mail message.
- 7. After you're done composing your e-mail, click Send.



Click Attach to attach a file to the e-mail. When the attachment window appears, click Choose File and browse to the file that you want to attach. Select the file, click Choose, and then click Attach in the Attachment window. Click Apply after you're done attaching files. Remember, some people are limited on the size of file attachments they can receive in e-mail, so avoid e-mailing large files.

•	Mail Acto		od + iTunes ∫ Amarks Ho	Mac unePape G	QuickTim oups iCard			lac OS X keithunden	rdahi 310
Get Mail	Zi (Move Mess	age To:	Go To: INBOX	10 su	Folders	Address Book Pe	-	Co
	1 - 2 of 2 in (160	X (1 Unread)			E		in	Subject 4	
	From Keth Underdahl	Sulp	et Ir Referee Sche	<u></u>			Date & Time Today at 06:51		50e
ē	Azple			tarted. Account is	ntormat		Sep 20 08: 3799		6.7 18
	1 - 2 of 2 in 1480	XX (1 Wread)	Duiete	i Reply i Reply A	11 Forward				
	1 - 2 of 2 in 1980	X (1 Unead)		i Başılıy i Başılıy A Chundardabil'i'nış					
	1 - 2 of 2 in 1480	IX (3 Unexad)			c.com				

Figure 9-11: Use .Mac to check e-mail with any Internet-connected computer.



Figure 9-12: Reading and sending .Mac e-mail is easy!



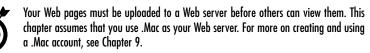
Blogging and Web Designing with iWeb

Not so long ago, keeping in touch with distant friends and family meant writing letters, stuffing envelopes, and licking stamps. And if you wanted to share some favorite photos, you had to get expensive film duplicates made by a photo processor.

The Internet has revolutionized the way we keep in touch. E-mail is one great way to communicate with distant relations, and you can also create your own Web site. When you create a Web page and put it online, anyone with Internet access can read your story and see your pictures. And you don't have to be a trained Web developer to produce your own online presence because Apple produces a good Web design program called *iWeb*. iWeb is bundled with many new Macs, or you can purchase it as part of the iLife suite from your favorite Apple retailer.

This chapter shows you how to create a Web page with iWeb and how to upload your Web page to the Internet so that anyone can see it. Steps also show you how to create and share

- ➡ Blogs: Short for Weblogs, blogs are daily or weekly narratives that you post online for others to read. Blogs may focus on your travels, politics, hobbies, your life in general, or any other subject that you can imagine.
- Podcasts: A Podcast is like a mix between a blog and a radio or TV show. You can record your own Podcasts, which can then be shared with others through iTunes.





➡ Upload the Web Page to a Web Server	106
🗝 Create a Weblog	107
➡ Publish Your Weblog Online	108
···→ Record a Podcast	109

Create a Web Page

1. Launch iWeb from the Dock or from the Applications folder.



The first time you launch iWeb, you may be asked to confirm keychain access for your .Mac account. Choose Allow Once to log in to .Mac only this time, or choose Always Allow if you always want iWeb to connect to your .Mac account.

- **2.** In the Template window that appears, as shown in Figure 10-1, select a theme for your Web site in the list of themes on the left.
- **3.** After you choose a theme, choose a page style from the list of pages on the right.
- 4. Click Choose.
- *5.* In the page that's created, click in a text area to replace placeholder text with your own, as shown in Figure 10-2.
- **6.** To change text formatting, click and drag over the text you want to change and click Inspector in the iWeb toolbar.
- **7.** When the Inspector window appears in the upper-right corner of the screen, as shown in Figure 10-2, click the T button to open the Text Inspector.
- **8.** Use the menus and options in the Text Inspector to change text formatting. If you want to create a numbered or bulleted list, as shown in Figure 10-2, click the List button in the Text Inspector and then choose a list style in the Bullets & Numbering menu.



Figure 10-1: Choose a theme and page template.



Figure 10-2: Replace the placeholder text with your own.



- *9.* To replace a placeholder picture with a photo of your own, open a Finder window and browse to a picture that you want to use on your Web page.
- **10.** Arrange the Finder and iWeb windows so that they're both visible, as shown in Figure 10-3, and then click and drag the photo from the Finder to iWeb.
- **11.** To add a new page to your Web site, choose File⇔New Page and then choose a page template for the new page, as shown in Figure 10-1.
- **12.** To change the name of a page, double-click it in the list of pages on the left side of the screen and then type a new name.



Don't use spaces in file names. For best results, try to use descriptive single-word names for all your Web pages.

- *13.* To create a hyperlink, click and drag to select some text on which you want to create a link.
- **14.** Open the Inspector if it isn't already open and then click the Link Inspector button (a blue circle with an arrow).
- 15. Select Enable as a Hyperlink.
- *16.* In the Link To menu, choose whether you want to link to one of your own pages, an external page, a file, or an e-mail message.
- **17.** Choose a specific target for the link in the second menu or field. If you're linking to one of your own pages, choose the page, as shown in Figure 10-4.



Don't forget to save your work periodically. Choose File=>Save to save your changes.



Figure 10-3: Click and drag photos into iWeb.



Figure 10-4: Use the Link Inspector to create hyperlinks.

Upload the Web Page to a Web Server

- 1. After you're done creating your Web site, choose File → Save to save your work.
- **2.** Choose File⇔Publish All to .Mac, as shown in Figure 10-5.
- **3.** Read the warning message that appears about copyrighted content and then click Continue when you're sure that your Web site is in compliance with copyright laws.
- **4.** If iWeb tells you that Publish will work in the background, click OK. Your Web site takes longer to publish if it includes many pictures.
- *5.* When the site is completely uploaded, make a note of the Web address listed in the notification tab that appears. This is the address that others will use to visit your Web site.
- *6.* Click Visit Site Now in the notification tab.
- **7.** Test your Web site in your Web browser, as shown in Figure 10-6. Make sure that links function and that images display properly.



If possible, test your Web site in several different browser applications, such as Safari and Firefox. If possible, also test the site with Internet Explorer on a Windows PC.



If you use a Web server other than .Mac, in iWeb choose File⇒ Publish to a Folder and then choose a folder on your hard drive in which the Web site should be stored. Use a File Transfer Protocol (FTP) program to upload your Web site to the server following the instructions provided by the Web server's administrator.



Figure 10-5: Publish your site to .Mac.



Figure 10-6: Test the Web site in multiple browser applications.

Create a Weblog

- 1. Launch iWeb and create a Web site, as described earlier in this chapter.
- 2. Choose File⇔New Page.
- **3.** Choose the theme for your Web site on the left and then locate the Blog template on the right.
- **4.** Click the Blog template and then click Choose.
- **5.** Enter your own personalized text and pictures, as described earlier in this chapter.
- **6.** To add a Weblog entry, click Entries in the Site Organizer on the left side of the screen and then click Add Entry in the list of blog entries at the top of the screen, as shown in Figure 10-7.



All blog entries appear in the list. To delete an entry, select it in the list and click Delete Entry.

- 7. When a new blog screen appears in the lower part of the iWeb window, type the day's entry.
- **8.** Click the main blog entry in the Site Organizer and update your personal information, as shown in Figure 10-8.



After your initial update of the Weblog's front page, the page updates automatically every time you make a new entry.



Figure 10-7: Click Add Entry to create a new blog entry.



Figure 10-8: Personalize the front page for your blog.

Publish Your Weblog Online

- 1. After you're done editing your Weblog in iWeb, choose File⇔Publish All to .Mac, as shown in Figure 10-9.
- **2.** Confirm that you have the right to publish the contents of your Weblog and follow the instructions onscreen to upload all files.



Remember, you must re-upload your Weblog every time you add an entry. Make sure that you choose Publish All to .Mac in the File menu to ensure that all blog-related files are uploaded.

- **3.** After the files are uploaded, choose File Visit Published Site to test the site in a Web browser.
- 4. Click the Blog link to view the Weblog.
- **5.** To subscribe to the RSS feed, click the RSS Subscribe link on the blog page and then read the RSS entries, as shown in Figure 10-10.



RSS feeds send automatic notices to readers when your Weblog changes. Readers who want to subscribe to your Weblog must have an RSS-capable Web browser or other program that can use RSS feeds. Safari is RSS-capable, but Mozilla Firefox is not.



RSS feeds can be added to OS X Leopard Dashboard. See Chapter 7 for more on adding RSS feeds to Dashboard.



Figure 10-9: Choose File=>Publish All to .Mac to upload your complete Weblog.

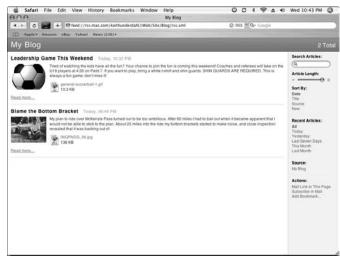


Figure 10-10: Users with RSS-capable browsers can subscribe to your Weblog.

Record a Podcast

- **1.** Launch GarageBand (like iWeb, GarageBand is part of the iLife suite) from the Dock or the Applications folder.
- **2.** Click New Podcast Episode in the GarageBand splash screen that appears.
- **3.** In the New Project window, type a file name for the Podcast and click Create.
- **4.** In the list of audio tracks, click the Male Voice or Female Voice (as appropriate) track and make sure that a microphone is connected to your Mac.
- *5.* Click the Record button and start recording your Podcast. Click Stop when you're done.



Try to record in as quiet an area as possible. Even things like noisy computer fans or air blowing through heat ducts can foul the quality of your audio recording. Also, consider hanging blankets or drapes on the walls to minimize sound reflection.

- 6. Choose Share与Send Podcast to iWeb, as shown in Figure 10-11.
- **7.** When the Podcast appears on a new blog page in iWeb, as shown in Figure 10-12, edit the text of the page. The text should describe the subject of the Podcast.
- **8.** In iWeb, choose File⇔Publish All to .Mac to upload your Podcast and other changes.



Figure 10-11: Send your Podcast to iWeb after you're done recording.



Figure 10-12: Edit the text on the Podcast page.



Chatting on Your Mac

A lthough the Internet has only been in widespread use for a little over a decade, its roots go all the way back to the late 1960s. One of the earliest uses for the Internet was *live chat* — distant parties typed messages to each other in real time. This chat tradition continues today and is made easy by instant messaging programs, such as AOL Instant Messenger (AIM), MSN Messenger, ICQ, and Apple's iChat. Not only does iChat give you access to the .Mac network of chat users, but it can be configured to work with some other popular instant messaging networks as well.

In addition to typed text messages, some chat programs now offer voice chat as well. Real time voice chat may not seem revolutionary to anyone who has ever used a telephone, but the free or nearly-free cost of Internet-based voice chat appeals to anyone who has ever paid a long distance phone bill. iChat can be configured to work with popular voice networks, including Skype and Google Talk.

This chapter shows you how to chat via iChat. It also shows you how to configure iChat for use with the Skype and Google Talk voice networks. Finally, this chapter also shows you how to use a third-party chat program — Adium — which is available for Mac. Adium can be used with many of the most popular instant messaging networks, including AOL Instant Messenger, MSN, ICQ, Yahoo, and more.



Get ready to . . .

··→ Set Up iChat11	2
🗝 Chat using iChat11	3
Horing Your Screen with iChat	4
➡ Use Google Talk with iChat11	5
🖚 Install Skype11	6
➡ Place Calls Using Skype11	7
	8

Set Up iChat

- 1. Launch iChat from the Dock or the Applications folder.
- **2.** If this is the first time you're launching iChat, enter your .Mac or AIM account information, as shown in Figure 11-1, and then click Continue.
- *3.* Click Done when you're done setting up your iChat account.
- **4.** If you use a Jabber chat account, choose iChat → Preferences, click the Accounts button, and then click the Add Account button (it looks like a plus sign) in the lower-left corner of the Preferences window. Choose Jabber in the Account Type menu and enter your Jabber account information.



Google Talk — which is covered in the next task — is a Jabber account.

5. If you want to be able to easily chat with other people on your local network, open iChat Preferences, click the Accounts button, and place a check mark next to Use Bonjour Messaging.

_
- F

If you enable Bonjour, you may see a warning message about your Firewall settings. If you see this warning, click the Open Sharing Prefs button. In Sharing preferences, click Firewall and then place a check mark next to iChat Bonjour. Close Sharing preferences when you're done. See Chapter 20 for more on working with the Mac OS X Firewall.

- **6.** To add a chat partner, choose Buddies⇒Add Buddy and then click New Person.
- **7.** Enter an account name or an e-mail address in the window, as shown in Figure 11-2, and then click Add.



Figure 11-1: Enter your chat account information here.



If you don't yet have a .Mac or other iChat-compatible account, click the Get an iChat Account button and follow the instructions onscreen to create an account. For more on getting and using a .Mac account, see Chapter 9.

count Name:	boble@mac.com	.Mac 🗘
dd to Group:	Buddies	\$
First Name:	Bob	
Last Name:	Smith	
	Can	cel Add

Figure 11-2: Add chat buddies to your Address Book.



Chat using iChat

- **1.** To chat with someone, double-click the person's name in your list of chat buddies.
- **2.** Type a message, as shown in Figure 11-3, and then press Return to send the message.



If you receive a chat message from a buddy, click in the chat window that appears automatically to begin chatting.

- **3.** To add a smiley to your chat message, click the smiley icon on the right side of the text box and choose a smiley from the menu that appears.
- **4.** If you're leaving the computer for a while, choose iChat ⇒ My Status and then choose a status (such as Out to Lunch or On the Phone) from the menu that appears.
- 5. To change your account picture, choose iChat⇒Change My Picture. In the Buddy Picture window, as shown in Figure 11-4, click Choose and browse to a new picture. Click Open to select the picture and then click Set to close the Buddy Picture window and set your new picture.
- 6. To change the font or chat balloon colors used when you chat, choose iChat Preferences and then click Messages. Use the color menus to change the color of your balloons or text and click Set Font to choose a different font and size.



If incoming text is too small or too hard to read, place a check mark next to Reformat Incoming Messages and then click Set Font to choose a bigger, easier-to-read font.

	/l with Keith's iBook <keithunderdahl@keiths-ibook g4> 7/8/07 3:30 PM</keithunderdahl@keiths-ibook
н	li Keith!
С	low's it going?
	great!
h	ow was your camping trip?
	awesome! CJ went fishing and caught some yummy trout!
	٠. ء
Grandk	ala baaturaali sussiaa usar asad
though	oa's boat wasn't running very good

Figure 11-3: Type messages and press Return to send them.



You can add additional chat accounts at any time. Choose iChat=:> Preferences, click the Accounts button, and then click the Add button (it looks like a plus sign) in the lower-left corner of the Accounts screen. Enter the account name and password for the account in the window that appears.



Figure 11-4: Select a new Buddy image here.



Sharing Your Screen with iChat

- 1. Launch iChat from the Dock or Applications folder.
- **2.** Begin a chat with a buddy, as I describe earlier in this chapter.
- **3.** To access your chat partner's screen, choose Buddies ⇒ Share . . . and choose the buddy's name.
- **4.** If you receive a request to share your screen, as shown in Figure 11-5, click Accept to accept the request or Decline if you don't want to allow sharing.



Click Text Reply if you wish to ask the buddy a question or send a message before you start screen sharing.

- *5.* To control screen sharing, use the window, as shown in Figure 11-6, to perform the following tasks:
 - **Stop:** Click the X (Stop) button to stop screen sharing.
 - Screen: Click the Screen button (it looks like a cube) to view your buddy's screen.
 - Audio: Click the Audio button (it looks like a microphone) to toggle audio on and off. You can also adjust volume using the volume slider under the Audio button.



To immediately stop screen sharing at any time, press Control+Esc.



Figure 11-5: Click Accept to share your screen.



Figure 11-6: Use this window to control screen sharing.

Use Google Talk with iChat

- 1. Launch iChat from the Dock or Applications folder.
- 2. Choose iChat >Preferences to open the Preferences dialog.
- **3.** Click Accounts at the top of the Preferences dialog and then click the Add button (it looks like a plus sign) in the lower-left corner of the Accounts window.
- **4.** In the Account Type menu, choose Jabber Account, as shown in Figure 11-7.
- **5.** Enter your Gmail e-mail address in the Account Name, as shown in Figure 11-7.



A Gmail e-mail account is required to use Google Talk.

- 6. Enter your Gmail password in the Password field and enter gmail.com in the Server field.
- **7.** Click Add to create the account and then close the Accounts preferences window.
- **8.** In iChat, choose Windowr⇒Show Jabber List to view your list of Google Talk buddies, as shown in Figure 11-8.
- **9.** To start an audio chat with a Google Talk buddy, click the name of the buddy in your Jabber List and then click the Audio Chat button (it looks like a telephone) at the bottom of the Jabber List window.



Figure 11-7: Create a new Jabber account with your Google Talk account.

⊖ Keith Underdahl Available →	
▼ Buddies	
▼ Offline	
Christa Waiting for Authorization	P
⊖ Ryan Waiting for Authorization	P

Figure 11-8: Use the Jabber window to chat with your Google Talk buddies.



Install Skype

- 1. Visit www.skype.com and follow the instructions on the Skype Web site to download Skype for Mac.
- 2. After Skype is done downloading, double-click the downloaded disk image (.dmg) file to mount the installer's disk image. Click Continue if you see an application warning.
- **3.** In the Finder window that appears, click and drag the Skype icon to the Applications folder, as shown in Figure 11-9.
- **4.** Open the Applications folder and then double-click the Skype icon to launch the program.



If you want to add Skype to the Dock, open the Applications folder and then click and drag the Skype icon to the Dock.

- 5. Read and accept the Skype license agreement.
- **6.** If you already have a Skype account, enter your Skype name and password, as shown in Figure 11-10.If you don't have an account, click Don't Have a Skype Name and create an account using the dialog that appears.



If you do not yet have a Skype account, click the Don't Have a Skype Name link and then enter a name and password to create a new account in the window that appears. Click Create to create the account. If the name you entered is already taken, a warning message advises you of this fact.

7. Click Sign In to sign in to Skype.



The first time you log in to Skype you may be prompted to update your account's personal information. Update the information as desired and click Apply to close the account profile window.

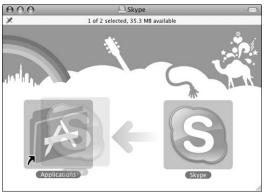


Figure 11-9: Click and drag Skype to the Applications folder.



Figure 11-10: Enter your Skype name and password.

Place Calls Using Skype

- 1. Launch Skype from the Applications folder.
- **2.** Type a Skype name or phone number in the text field at the top of the Skype window.
- **3.** If the name isn't in your Contact list, click Search for Skype Name when the link appears, as shown in Figure 11-11.
- **4.** In the Skype search window that appears, wait for the search results to finish. When you see the listing for the person you want to call, click the name to select it and then click Add Contact.
- **5.** Click the name of a person you want to call and then click the Call button (it's green and looks like a telephone).
- **6.** When the Call window appears, as shown in Figure 11-12, you're connected. Begin speaking.
- **7.** To disconnect from a call, click the red Hang Up button in the lower-right corner of the Call window.



You can also do text chats with Skype. Click the user's name and then click the Text Chat button (it's blue and looks like a cartoon speech balloon) next to the name. Text chat is a useful feature if a poor Internet connection or hardware troubles prevent one party from hearing or speaking.



To set up a conference call with multiple parties, choose Call=>Start Conference Call. Select members for the call in the Start Conference window that appears and then click Start. Conference calls work best if everyone on the call has a fast Internet connection.



Figure 11-11: Use the Skype search function to find contacts.

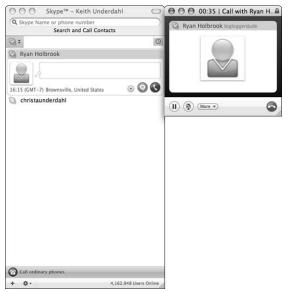


Figure 11-12: Make free calls over the Internet with Skype.



Text Chat with Adium

- 1. Visit www.adiumx.com and follow the instructions on the Web site to download Adium.
- 2. After the download is complete, locate and double-click the disk image (.dmg) file for the installer and then drag the Adium icon to the Applications folder shortcut that appears in the Adium window.
- **3.** Open your Applications folder and double-click the Adium icon to launch the program.
- **4.** In the Preferences: Accounts window that appears the first time you launch Adium, click the Add Account button (it looks like a plus sign in the lower-left corner) and choose an account type, as shown in Figure 11-13.
- *5.* Enter the account name and password for your chat account in the window that appears and then click OK to create the account.
- *6.* Close the Preferences: Accounts window after you're done adding accounts and making other changes.



To re-open the Preferences window later and add more accounts, choose Adium=>Preferences.

7. Double-click a contact in your list of contacts and begin typing a message, as shown in Figure 11-14.

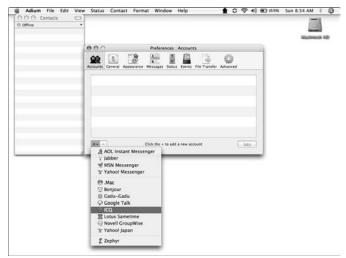
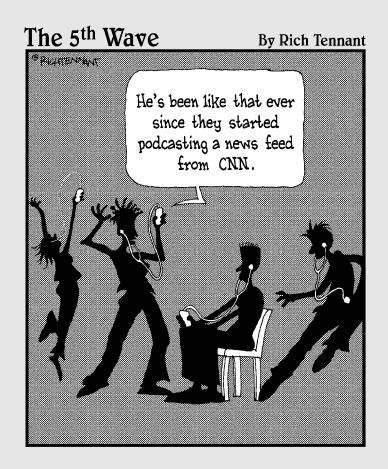


Figure 11-13: Choose an account type to configure in Adium.

000	vonvonvon	0
	S 🙆 🔾 A	- EI O
howdy! I am back in	town	

Figure 11-14: Adium can be used with most popular chat networks.

Part 4 Using Multimedia



Chapter 12: Using iTunes and iPods121

Import Music from CDs	122
Create a Playlist	123
Buy Music from the iTunes Store	124
Listen to Internet Radio	125
Export Songs to an iPod	126
Adjust iPod Settings	127
Delete Media from an iPod	
Store Data Files on Your iPod	128
Play Music on Your Stereo with AirTunes	

Connect the MP3 Player to Your Mac	132
Check for iTunes Compatibility	
Copy Music Files to the Player	
Create Folders on the Player	
Delete Files from the Player	135

Chapter 14: Watching Videos and DVDs137

Change the Default DVD Player	138
Access DVD Features	139
Modify DVD Player Settings	140
Watch Movies with QuickTime	
Adjust QuickTime Settings	142
Update QuickTime	142
Install Flip4Mac	143
View Windows Media Video with Flip4Mac	

Chapter 15: Viewing, Organizing,
and Improving Pictures145Launch iPhoto146Download Photos from a Camera146Organize Your Photo Library147Rotate Photos148Resize Images148Crop Images149Create a Slideshow150Install Adobe Photoshop Elements151Resize an Image in Adobe Photoshop152Improve Color with Photoshop153Export a Photoshop Image for the Web154Chapter 16: Making Movies156Launch iMovie156Capture Video from a Camcorder157

Capture Video from a Camcorder	157
Assemble Clips into a Movie	158
Trim Clips on the Timeline	159
Add a Soundtrack	160
Insert Sound Effects	
Apply Video Effects	162
Insert Transitions between Clips	163
Add Titles to Your Movie	164
Export the Movie for Web Viewing	
Burn the Movie to DVD	

Using iTunes and iPods

More than almost any other company, Apple has become associated with digital music in the last few years. The iPod has become the world's most popular and identifiable MP3 player, and the iTunes program revolutionized online music sales at a time when downloadable songs looked like they might be litigated out of existence.

iPods and iTunes get along just fine with Windows PCs, but because you have a Macintosh, the integration couldn't be more simple. No matter what iPod you have — ranging from a tiny iPod Nano to a full size (yet still compact) iPod — it is recognized instantly when you connect the iPod to your Mac. And because iTunes is the program for synchronizing music to an iPod, it goes without saying that your Mac already has the necessary software to copy songs and videos to your iPod. This chapter shows you how to quickly and easily use an iPod with your Mac.

Of course, you don't need an iPod to use iTunes. Even if you have no MP3 player at all, iTunes is a great program for storing, organizing, and playing songs, videos, audio books, and other multimedia files. This chapter shows you how to manage and play your multimedia library with iTunes.



To ensure you have the latest version of iTunes, run Software Update, as described in Chapter 4, or visit www.apple.com/itunes.

Chapter 12

Get ready to . . .

→ Import Music from CDs	122
➡ Create a Playlist	123
➡ Buy Music from the iTunes Store	124
➡ Listen to Internet Radio	125
➡ Export Songs to an iPod	126
➡ Adjust iPod Settings	127
➡ Delete Media from an iPod	127
➡ Store Data Files on Your iPod	128
➡ Play Music on Your Stereo	
with AirTunes	128

Import Music from CDs

- 1. Insert a music CD into the disc drive on your computer.
- **2.** When iTunes opens, wait several seconds for iTunes to obtain data the data may include song titles, artist names, and album titles about the music CD.



If iTunes doesn't obtain song data automatically, choose Advanced=>Get CD Track Names. Your computer must be connected to the Internet to obtain song data.

- **3.** Remove the check mark next to the songs you don't want to import. In Figure 12-1, the last song on the CD was deselected.
- **4.** If you wish to manually modify a data field (such as the song name or genre), click the field once to select it, wait about two seconds, and then click it again. Type a new entry.
- **5.** Click Import CD to import songs. In Figure 12-2, the first song has been completely imported, and the second song is in the process of being imported.
- **6.** After all the songs are imported, click the Eject Disc button in the lower-right corner of the iTunes window.



When you start to import music, iTunes begins playing the imported songs. The import occurs slightly faster if you stop playback.

A same A same
MARY A Name Time Athem Amera Maja 6 GC 00° 241 405 Figures Quo Valimus Rock Maja 2 8 GC 00° 241 405 Figures Quo Valimus Rock T V5 Most 3 8 Driving 353 40 Figures Quo Valimus Rock T V5 Most 4 8 First-tors 353 40 Figures Quo Valimus Rock T V5 Most 4 8 First-tors 359 40 Figures Quo Valimus Rock T Radio 6 80 Crylatry 3124 24 Figures Quo Valimus Rock T Radio 6 80 Crylatry 3124 24 Figures Quo Valimus Rock T Radio 6 80 Crylatry 3124 24 Figures Quo Valimus Rock T Tors Store 9 8 Anmar Comth 412 24 Figures Quo Valimus Rock D CVCCS 10 8 Single Truth 510 49 Figures Quo Valimus Rock Quo Valimus 201 41 Gargers Quo Valimus
Music 1 af Crt Off 2-41.49 Fingers Oos Valimus Rock Mosic 2 B Hoors To Winelf 3-35.49 Fingers Oos Valimus Rock Mosics 3 B Driving 3-55.49 Fingers Oos Valimus Rock Policatis 3 B Driving 3-55.49 Fingers Oos Valimus Rock Policatis 5 B Cryshaly 3-12.49 Fingers Oos Valimus Rock Policatis 5 B Cryshaly 3-12.49 Fingers Oos Valimus Rock Ott 8 Sta Monkrys 2-16.49 Fingers Oos Valimus Rock Ott 8 Sta Monkrys 2-16.49 Fingers Oos Valimus Rock Ott 8 Sta Monkrys 2-16.49 Fingers Oos Valimus Rock Christ 8 Sta Monkrys 2-16.49 Fingers Oos Valimus Rock Christ 8 Stamokrys 2-16.49 Fingers Oos Valimus Rock Drivis 4 Stamokrys 2-16.49 Fingers
Jamins 2 Hoose To Mycelf 3.35 49 Fingers Oue Valimus Rock W Movies 3 B Driving 3.53 49 Fingers Oue Valimus Rock W Movies 4 B Driving 3.53 49 Fingers Oue Valimus Rock W Movies 5 8 Finders 3.59 49 Fingers Oue Valimus Rock W Rode 6 8f Ver Yer Yer 3.28 49 Fingers Oue Valimus Rock Otte 7 8 fas Monkrys 2.36 49 Fingers Que Valimus Rock Citte 7 8 fas Monkrys 2.36 49 Fingers Que Valimus Rock Citte 9 Armana Comth 4.12 24 Fingers Que Valimus Rock OVOUV Valimus 10 8f Enchnickel Dramans 6.14 49 Fingers Que Valimus Rock VALVISTS 11 11 11 12 14 49 Fingers Que Valimus Rock W Nov Kalimid 14
Moviet 3 # Driving 3:01 49 Fingers Operatinues Rock Policitatis 3 # Driving 3:03 49 Fingers Operatinues Rock Policitatis 5 # Crychaly 3:12 49 Fingers Operatinues Rock Policitatis 5 # Crychaly 3:12 49 Fingers Operatinues Rock Ont 8 # Schowkrys 2:16 49 Fingers Operatinues Rock © The State 9 # Schowkrys 2:16 49 Fingers Operatinues Rock © Three Store 9 # Aveman Cometh 4:12 49 Fingers Operatinues Rock © Ouc Vadimut 0 9 9 Fingers Operatinues Rock © Ouc Vadimut 2:09 49 Fingers Operatinues Rock © Ouc Vadimut 2:09 49 Fingers Operatinues Rock © Vadimut 2:09 49 Fingers Operatinues Rock © Vadimut 2:09
TV Shorts 4 B Frobate 3.59 49 Fingers One Valimus Back Tradicatis 5 8 Cryslavy 3.59 49 Fingers One Valimus Back Tradicatis 5 8 Cryslavy 3.28 49 Fingers One Valimus Back Tradicatis 6 8f Yes Yes Yes 3.28 49 Fingers One Valimus Back One 7 8f Sa Monkeys 2.16 49 Fingers One Valimus Back Other 9 8 Azeman Comith 4.12 24 Fingers One Valimus Back DEVICES 10 8f Stednesys 5.10 49 Fingers One Valimus Back 0 One Valimus 11 8f Enchrictel Dramatis 6.11 49 Fingers One Valimus Back 0 Nov Valimus 12 4f Oue Valimus 2.09 49 Fingers One Valimus Back 0 Nov Valimus 12 4f Oue Valimus 2.09 49 Fingers One Valimus Back 0 Nov Valimus 2.01
Policiality 5 El Cychalvy 312 49 Fingers One Valimus Rick Relatio 6 B Crychalvy 312 49 Fingers One Valimus Rick Ott 7 B Sa Monkeys 216 49 Fingers One Valimus Rick El Tones Store 9 B Sa Monkeys 216 49 Fingers One Valimus Rick El Tones Store 9 B Areman Cometh 412 49 Fingers One Valimus Rick Couck Valimut 0 B Single Truth 5110 49 Fingers One Valimus Rick Ouck Valimut 209 49 Fingers One Valimus Rick Ouck Valimut 209 49 Fingers One Valimus Rick PLAVLISTS 13 C United 2:17 49 Fingers Que Valimus Rick B Mark Videou 13 C United 2:17 49 Fingers Que Valimus Rick B Mark Videou 13 C United 2:17 49 Fingers Que Valimus <
7 # Sa Monkeys 2.16 49 Fingers Que Valimus Rock © Titles Store 9 # Soleways 2.16 49 Fingers Que Valimus Rock © Out Vadimus 9 # Aveman Cometh 4.12 49 Fingers Que Valimus Rock © Out Vadimus 0 # Single Trinth 5.10 49 Fingers Que Valimus Rock © Out Vadimus 0 11 # Technicator Dreamin 641 49 Fingers Que Valimus Rock PLAVILISTS © Untrided 2:17 49 Fingers Que Valimus Rock @ Markit Videol @ Untride 2:17 49 Fingers Que Valimus Rock @ Markit Videol @ Untride 2:17 49 Fingers Que Valimus Rock @ Markit Videol @ Yor Yo Rated W Ended Ended Ended Ended Ended
7 # Sa Monkeys 2.16 49 Fingers Que Valimus Rock © Titles Store 9 # Soleways 2.16 49 Fingers Que Valimus Rock © Out Vadimus 9 # Aveman Cometh 4.12 49 Fingers Que Valimus Rock © Out Vadimus 0 # Single Trinth 5.10 49 Fingers Que Valimus Rock © Out Vadimus 0 11 # Technicator Dreamin 641 49 Fingers Que Valimus Rock PLAVILISTS © Untrided 2:17 49 Fingers Que Valimus Rock @ Markit Videol @ Untride 2:17 49 Fingers Que Valimus Rock @ Markit Videol @ Untride 2:17 49 Fingers Que Valimus Rock @ Markit Videol @ Yor Yo Rated W Ended Ended Ended Ended Ended
There Store
Vext25 0 0 6 imple Truth 5.12 9 implest Que Valimus Rock 2 Oue Valimus 0.01 47 implest Que Valimus Rock 2 Oue Valimus 0.01 9 implest Truth 5.10 48 implest Que Valimus Rock 2 Oue Valimus 2.02 9 d9 implest Que Valimus Rock 2 Vexturest 2.09 49 impers Que Valimus Rock 3 Institled 2.17 49 impers Que Valimus Rock 4 90 Nutric 10 Unstitled 2.17 49 impers Que Valimus Rock 4 Munic Videos 10 Vexture 10 10 10 10
© Ouo Vadamus 0 11 il 17 Technicalor Dreams 641 49 Fingers Ouo Vadimus Bock NLAVLISTS © 10 Ou Vadimus 2019 49 Fingers Ouo Vadimus Bock 13 © Unoted 2:17 49 Fingers Quo Vadimus Bock © Plany Sunifie © Mark Videos © Mark Videos
© Oue Vadimus Op 11 il il Technicalor Dreams 641 49 Fingers Ope Vadimus Rock NLAVILISTS 00 40 Vadimus 2019 49 Fingers Ope Vadimus Rock 0 Purly Shufte 0 Mask Videos 1 My Vio Rated
n_AVLISTS 12 of Que Vadimus 2:09 49 Fingers Que Vadimus Rock © Funty Shuffle @ Yourky Shuffle @ Mosk Videons @ Mosk Videons @ Mosk Videons
Party Shuttle Is a which a site of thight's que takeness much Party Shuttle Monic Videon Monic Videon Monic Videon
Party Shuffle 90'S Music Manic Videos Manic Videos Manic Videos
Music Videos My Top Rated
Music Videos My Top Rated
My Top Rated
Recently Added
Becently Played
iii Ton 25 Most Played
∰ Recently Flaved ∰ Top 25 Most Flaved

Figure 12-1: Select which songs you want to import.

Figure 12-2: Songs import faster if you stop playback.

Create a Playlist

- 1. Launch iTunes.
- 2. Choose File Create Smart Playlist.



You can also quickly create a new empty playlist by choosing File=>New Playlist.

- **3.** In the Smart Playlist dialog box that appears, choose a category such as Artist, Genre, or Comment in the first menu.
- **4.** Choose a condition such as Contains or Does Not Contain in the second menu.
- *5.* Type a criterion in the third menu.
- **6.** To add additional criteria, as shown in Figure 12-3, click the plus sign to the right of the third menu. In Figure 12-3, a playlist is created by using songs in the Jazz and Blues genres.



When using multiple rules, choose Any or All in the Match menu at the top of the Smart Playlist dialog box, as appropriate.

- 7. Choose other criteria for the playlist and then click OK.
- **8.** After the playlist is created, type a descriptive name for the playlist in the Source pane on the left side of the screen, as shown in Figure 12-4.
- *9.* To add songs to a smart playlist, choose File=>Edit Smart Playlist and repeat the above steps to add more songs.



For regular playlists, simply click and drag songs from the Library to the playlist in the Source pane.

	Smar	t Playlist	
Match all	of the following rules:		
Genre	contains	Jazz	$\Theta \oplus$
Genre	¢ contains	Classical	Θ
Limit to 25		ed by random	•
Live updating		(Cancel OK

Figure 12-3: Smart playlists offer a faster way to create playlists.

Music 1 # Verses Mitares - War Pays 3.27 Rodelitos Sabibatum Classical Music 2 @ Oco Filios - Inniva's Fers 5.38 Rodelitos Sabibatum Classical Music 2 @ Oco Filios - Inniva's Fers 5.38 Rodelitos Sabibatum Classical Music 2 # Goa Filios - Inniva's Fers 5.38 Rodelitos Sabibatum Classical Music 2 # Statumbulats Comestican - A.N. 6.18 Rodelitos Sabibatum Classical Music 5 # Post Attenticates - Atter filias 3.42 Rodelitos Sabibatum Classical STOLE 8 # Softudo - Softude 3.50 Rodelitos Sabibatum Classical 9 # Rotac Confusionis - Wherel of 3.50 Rodelitos Sabibatum Classical 9 # Rotac Confusionis - Wherel of 3.50 Rodelitos Sabibatum Classical 9 # Rotac Confusionis - Wherel of 3.57 Rodelitos Sabibatum Classical 9 # Rotac Confusionis - Wherel of 3.57 Rodelitos Sabibatum Classical 10 # Marcan Votatios 1.11 # Notac Softub Caleitos 5.50 <t< th=""><th>000</th><th></th><th>-</th><th>iTunes</th><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th></t<>	000		-	iTunes				
ListAAV Ver Solution Munic Maria News Constants Solution Munic Mories 1 Wirers Milaters - Wir Pigs 3.27 Rendelines Solution Classical Minic Mories 1 Wirers Milaters - Wir Pigs 3.17 Rendelines Solution Classical Minic Wirers Milaters - Wir Pigs 3.17 Rendelines Solution Classical V Thome Vers Solution Solution Classical Classical Statis Wirers Milaters - Wir Pigs 3.27 Rendelines Solution Classical Statis Wirers Mourin Someil - Finite Arthr Finite 3.08 Rondelines Solution Classical Statis B Solution - Soluted 3.08 Rondelines Solution Classical Statis B Tratestrum Vagion - Finite C. 3.07 Rondelines Solution Classical B Rospody'n Bite 1 M Vagiong Solution - Soluted 3.08 Rondelines Solution Marcian Portratis	(+()()) (+) (+) (+)					[11 JH Q.		
Music 1 # Verse Mittares - War Pays 3.27 Roadfilos Subbutum Classical Music 2 Gook Filian - Juniar's hers 5.31 Roadfilos Subbutum Classical Music 2 Gook Filian - Juniar's hers 5.31 Roadfilos Subbutum Classical Music 2 Balain 4 Roadfilos Subbutum Classical Music 4 Balain 5 # Post Marum Someil - Arking Ton. 5.40 Roadfilos Subbutum Classical STOIL 8 # Data Attaination - Arking Ton. 5.40 Roadfilos Subbutum Classical STOIL 8 # Softudo - Softude 3.51 Roadfilos Subbutum Classical STOIL 8 # Softudo - Softude 3.50 Roadfilos Subbutum Classical 9 # Roatca Confusionis - Wheel of 3.50 Roadfilos Subbutum Classical 9 # Roatca Confusionis - Wheel of 3.57 Roadfilos Subbutum Classical 9 # Roatca Confusionis - Wheel of 3.57 Roadfilos Subbutum Classical 10 # Martines Nettor Subfical 5.20 Roadfilos Subbutum C	000				View			
2 P Occ / Finish 2 P Occ / Finish 5.33 Rondellus Subbarum Classical W York P Occ / Finish # F Huambulkov Bonstition + A Mu 6.418 Rondellus Subbarum Classical W York # # # Finish 5.35 Rondellus Subbarum Classical W Policiass # # # Finish 5.00 Rondellus Subbarum Classical C Ratio 6 # Part Atternization - After Fore 3.54 Rondellus Subbarum Classical C Runs 6 # Magas - The Warad 3.50 Rondellus Subbarum Classical C Runs 8 # Solitude - Solitude 3.50 Rondellus Subbarum Classical C Runs # # Solitude - Solitude 3.50 Rondellus Subbarum Classical C Runs # # Solitude - Solitude 3.50 Rondellus Subbarum Classical C Runs # # Solitude - Solitude 3.50 Rondellus Subbarum Classical C Runs # # Solitude - Solitude 3.50 Rondellus Subbarum	LIERARY	-						A My R
Image: State of the state	13 Music	1						
JV Shows 3 # Fundmikub Domesticon - A.N 6:18 Rendellus Subbutum Classical Policiaus 3 # Pontiona Munici - Symptom 4:48 Rendellus Subbutum Classical J Ratio 6 # Post Attentional - Muri For. 3:00 Rendellus Subbutum Classical STOR: # Post Attentional - Muri For. 3:00 Rodellus Subbutum Classical J Ratio # National - Muri For. 3:00 Rodellus Subbutum Classical J Ratio # Solitudo - Solitude 3:00 Rodellus Subbutum Classical J Ratio # Rotex Confusionis - Wherei of 3:07 Rodellus Subbutum Classical J Ratio # Rotex Confusionis - Murie for 3:07 Rodellus Subbutum Classical J Ratio # Rotex Confusionis - Murie for 3:07 Rodellus Subbutum Classical J Ratio # Rotex Confusionis - Murie for 3:07 Rodellus Subbutum Classical J Ratio # Rotex Confusionis - Murie for 3:07 Rodellus Subbutum Classical J Ratio # Rotex Confusionis - Murie for 1:07 1:07 Rotex Rotex Rotex Jaz J Archtect	Movies				Rondellus	Sabbatum		
Products: 4 # Wingliams Multiple Symptom 4.44 Modelinis Sabibulini Classical Products: 4 # Prost Munice Symptom 5.00 Redditis Sabibulini Classical STORE 6 # Prost Anterinstein Anterinstein 3.00 Redditis Sabibulini Classical STORE 6 # Prost Munice Store 3.00 Redditis Sabibulini Classical STORE 6 # Storage Schuler 3.00 Redditis Sabibulini Classical STORE 6 # Storage Schuler 3.00 Redditis Sabibulini Classical STORE 9 # Schuler 3.00 Redditis Sabibulini Classical Stores 9 # Roadilis Sabibulini Classical Sabibulini Classical 10 W Top Katel 10 Corege Gerubini American Portratis		3						
Alailo 6 9 Mark Attenduction - After Fore. 9.42 Roadilius Subburn Classical STORE 7 9 Mark The Witzel 151 Roadilius Subburn Classical ITures Store 9 8 Solitudo - Solitude 151 Roadilius Subburn Classical 9 Market Confusionis - Minel for								
STOLE 7 W Magas - The Wizerd 2:51 Rondfillus Sabbatum Classical Image: Store 1 W Soltudo - Soltud								
STORE 8 ■ Ø Soltude - Soltude 3-50 Rondellus Sabbarum Classical V RAVLISTS 0 ■ Roza Collusion - Wherl Grad 3-50 Rondellus Sabbarum Classical 10 ■ Roza Collusion - Wherl Grad 3-50 Rondellus Sabbarum Classical 2 ■ Roza Collusion - Wherl Grad 3-50 Rondellus Sabbarum Classical 2 ■ W Sortist - André Boad 5-20 Rondellus Sabbarum Classical 2 Ø Architectus Urbis Caletars - Sp 6-20 Rondellus Sabbarum Classical 2 Ø Architectus Urbis Caletars - Sp 6-22 Rondellus Sabbarum Classical 3 Ø Maxico 11 Ø Ronzel Nine 16-84 George Cershwin American Portraits Jazz 1 Ø Architectus Urbis Caletars 11/35 George Cershwin American Portraits Jazz 1 Ø Architectus 11/35 George Cershwin American Portraits Jazz 1 Ø Architectus 9/31 Coorge Cershwin American Portraits Jazz 1 Ø Top 25 Mast Played 10 10 Coorge Cershwin American Portraits Jazz	T Radio							
Truncs Store Truncs Truncs Store Truncs Truncs	CTORE							
Provide 1 # Farstanni Vision 3.00 Rootenits 3.000,0001 Castical Provide # Farstanni Vision 1.00 8.000,000 1.00								
Strange Shuffle Markic More Shuffle More Shuffle More Shuffle Markic More Shuffle Markic Mark Markic	E iTunes store	9			Rondellus	Sabbatum	Classical	
20 # Architectus Urbis Caeters - 5p 4-52 Rondfilos Sabbarum Classical 20 # Marchitectus Urbis Caeters - 5p 16-85 George Gernhwin American Portraits	* PLAYLISTS		🕷 Planetarum Vagatio - Planet G	3:57	Rondellus	Sabbatum	Classical	
iei 50's Music 12 iff Anchrettus Urbis Caleties 5p 4:52 Rondilus Sabbarum Classical iii Rhapsolv III Bloe 16:48 George Cernhwin Antician Portatis Jazz Music Vision 18 Iff Angevision In Paris 11:05 Ceorge Cernhwin American Portatis Music Vision 16 If Core Ringhtm 9:13 Ceorge Cernhwin American Portatis Jazz Recently Addeta 16 If Core Ringhtm 9:13 Ceorge Cernhwin American Portraits Jazz Recently Addeta 16 If Core Ringhtm 9:13 Ceorge Cernhwin American Portraits	R Party Shuffle	11	I Via Gravis - A Hard Road	5:20	Rondellus	Sabbatum	Classical	
C (Express Cersive Manuel 2014) Manuel Valeed Manuel				p 4:52	Rondellus	Sabbatum	Classical	
Mulic Videot 15 Ward Carbon Park Marice Videot 15 Ward American Park Marice American Park Maria American Park Maria Maria American Park Maria American Park Maria American Park Maria American Pa		13	E Rhapsody In Blue	16:48	George Gershwin	American Portraits-	Jazz	
May Top Rated 16 all for Rhythm 9.31 Centry Cerstwin American Portraits Jazz Accently Added Top 25 Most Played	The second se	14	iel Porgy And Bess (Melodies)	11:05	George Gershwin	American Portraits-	Jazz	
Recently Added Recently Played Top 25 Most Played	Music Videos	15	M An American In Paris	17:55	George Gershwin	American Portraits	Jazz	
Recently Played Top 25 Most Played	My Top Rated	16	I Got Rhythm	9.31	George Gershwin	American Portraits-	jazz	
Top 25 Most Played	a Recently Added							
Top 25 Most Played	Recently Played							
	I TOD 25 MOST FIRAGO							
(<u> </u>								
		G		_				3.41.4
		1						
		6						
				nu	105 510			
iTunes Store								
Tunes store	+ × 0 0	_	16 songs, 1.8 hours,			Computer Sum		_

Figure 12-4: Give your playlist a descriptive name.



Buy Music from the iTunes Store

- 1. Launch iTunes, make sure your computer is connected to the Internet, and then click iTunes Store in the Source pane, as shown in Figure 12-5.
- **2.** Type a song or artist in the search box in the upper-right corner of the iTunes window and press Return to begin your search.
- **3.** Review the search results. To hear a preview, doubleclick a song. A 30-second preview of the song downloads and plays.
- **4.** When you find a song that you want to buy, click Buy Song in the far-right column of the song list.
- **5.** If you already have an Apple or AOL account, enter your ID and password in the login screen, as shown in Figure 12-6.



If you do not yet have an account, click Create New Account and follow the instructions onscreen to create an account. You need a credit card to create your account. After you're done creating the account and logged in, you need to re-click the Buy Song link.

6. When you see the confirmation window, review the song or album you're about to buy and then click Buy. The status area at the top of the iTunes screen shows the progress of the purchase and download.



You can disable the confirmation message by placing a check mark next to Don't Ask Me about Buying Songs Again, but it is not recommended.



Figure 12-5: Click Music Store to open the iTunes store.



Figure 12-6: Log in to the iTunes store with your Apple or AOL account.

Listen to Internet Radio

- 1. Launch iTunes and click Radio in the Source pane on the left side of the screen.
- **2.** Click an arrow next to a category to expand the listing, as shown in Figure 12-7.
- 3. Double-click a radio station to begin playing it.



If the radio station broadcast frequently cuts out while the signal is buffered, choose a different station with a lower bit rate. For example, if you have a dial-up Internet connection, you probably can't listen to radio stations with a bit rate greater than 48 kbps.

4. When you find a favorite radio station that you'll want to hear again later, click and drag the station to the Radio Stations playlist in the Source Pane, as shown in Figure 12-8.



Radio stations can be added to any playlist. If you don't see a Radio Stations playlist in your iTunes window, you can create one or create new radio station playlists.



Most playback features — such as Next Track and Pause — don't work while listening to streaming Internet radio. Like broadcast radio, you can only turn Internet radio on or off or adjust the volume.

000		iTunes			
000.		4	1	1 1 m Q.	
	0.47			View	Search
LIERARY	Stream A	Bit Rate	Comment		
E Music	► Alternative				
Maxies	IF Ambient				
	> Blues				
TV Shows	► Classic Rock				
Podcasts	► Classical				
Ratio	► Country				
STORE	► Dance				
TH (Tunes Store	► Eclectic				
	▶ Electronic				
Purchased	▶ Folk				
T PLAYLISTS	► Hip Hop / Rap				
S Party Shuffle	► International				
at 90's Music	⊫ jazz				
	► Latino				
JazzyStuff	It Pop				
Music Videos	► Public				
My Top Rated	¥ Reggae (19 streams)				
B Recently Added	The African Music Radio		This is an Online african N		
Recently Played	T African Music Radio		This is an Online african N		
Top 25 Most Pla	T BigupRadio.com		24/7 Reggae Dancehall * 1		
	🖓 BigupRadio.com		24/7 Reggae Dancehall *		
2	T Dr Dick's Dub Shack		Strictly Seriously Pure Dub		
Now Playing	🕆 Live ReggaeCast		Celebrating over 3 years of		
	Tive ReggaeCast		Celebrating over 3 years of		
	TMusikJaM on RauteMusik		#MusikJaM - 24/7 hours		
	🕆 #Musik.JaM on RauteMusik		#Musik.JaM - 24/7 hours		
Nothing	CRSRADIO.COM Reggae &		ORSRADIO: Reggae the be	st reggaeton los	
	7 RightOnRepgae		Roots and Dub Reggae		
Playing	TROOTS Reggae on Sky.fm		The best of classic and mo		
	Roots Reggae on Sky.fm		The best of classic and mo		
	T SJIRadio.com-Channel 2		A blend of urban, hiphop,		
	SIRadio.com-Channel 2 SIRadio.com-Channel 2		A blend of urban, hiphop, A blend of urban, hiphop,		
	CIBALA ANTA Chanal S	19 streams	A BIARD AT LIGHTS BIARAS		omputer +

Figure 12-7: Browse for an Internet radio station.

000		íTunes		
	+		10. Jac.	Q.
000	and the second sec		View	Search
TV Shows	A Name	Time Artist	Album	Genre My Ratir
Podcasts	1 M T (~~RightOnScales.x 2 M T Classic Blues Radio			Roots Dub blues,chica
T Radio	2 B Classic Blues Rabic	Contin		blues,chica
STORE	4 M Dimensions in Jazz			
III ITunes Store	5 H T (RightOnScales.			Roots Dub
et Purchased	6 St Chittlin Circuit Rad			
	7 🖬 🕆 Beatles-A-Rama	Contin		
* PLAYLISTS	8 🖬 🕆 Rockabilly Radio	Contin		
S Party Shuffle				
90's Music				
a jazzyStuff				
Music Videos				
My Top Rated				
B Recently Added	1			
Recently Played				
Top 25 Most Pla				
Di la				
3 49fingers				
I Fleetwood Mac	3			
Radio Stations O				
Now Playing	•			
3 Now maying				
Nothing				
Playing				
	C) • [• [
+ 24 0	 8 song 	s, 0 seconds, zero KB	40 Computer 4	Burn Disc 🗿 🚖

Figure 12-8: Save your favorite radio stations in playlists.

Export Songs to an iPod

1. Connect the iPod to your Mac.



You can connect the iPod directly to your Mac's Universal Serial Bus (USB) port. Alternatively, you may use an iPod Dock or USB extension cable.

- **2.** If iTunes doesn't launch automatically, launch iTunes from the Dock or the Applications folder.
- 3. Select songs that you want to add to the iPod.



To select multiple songs, hold down the HE key while clicking each song you want to add. To select a series of songs, select the first song and then hold down the Shift key while clicking the last song. All songs between the first and last song are selected.

- **4.** Click and drag songs to the iPod in the Source pane, as shown in Figure 12-9.
- *5.* To automatically fill space on the iPod, click the iPod in the Source pane to open its contents.
- **6.** In the Autofill From menu near the bottom of the iTunes window, select a folder or playlist from which you want Autofill to select songs.
- **7.** Remove the check mark next to Replace All Songs When Autofilling, as shown in Figure 12-10.
- **8.** Click Autofill. The iPod is filled automatically with songs from your iTunes library.

000			iTune	25			
000	4		-	S.		Q	-
000					View	54	arch
LIBRARY	Name		Time	Artist	Album	Cenre	My Rating
El Maix	🖬 On The Run		3:50	Pink Floyd	Dark Side Of The M	Rock	
Movies	ill Time		6:49	Pink Floyd	Dark Side Of The M	Rock	
TV Shows	If The Great Gig	In The Sky	4:44	Pink Floyd	Dark Side Of The M	Rock	
	E Money		6:22	Pink Floyd	Dark Side Of The M	Rock	
Podcasts	E Us And Them		7:49	Pink Floyd	Dark Side Of The M	Rock	
Radio	M Any Colour Yo	u Like	3:26	Pink Floyd	Dark Side Of The M	Rock	
STORE	🗑 Brain Damage		3:47	Pink Floyd	Dark Side Of The M	Rock	
	Eclipse		2:11	Pink Floyd	Dark Side Of The M	Rock	
ITunes Store	iel Jerry Was A Ra	ce Car Driver	3:27	Primus	Metropolitan Expo	Primus	
# Purchased	I Nature Boy		11:37	Primus	Metropolitan Expo	Primus	
* DEVICES	E Pork Chop's L	ittle Ditty	0:21	Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
	M My Name Is M	ud	4:47		Pork Soda	Metal	
Halla Songo Wester	Welcome To T	his World	Pork 3940	Primus Metal	Pork Soda	Metal	
* PLAYLISTS	E Bob			Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
Party Shuffle	# DMV		4:58	Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
er 90's Music	₩ Ol' Diamondb	ack Sturgeon (Fis	4:40	Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
Contraction and the second second	Mature Boy		5:33	Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
JazzyStuff	Wounded Kne		2:25	Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
Music Videos	Pork Soda		2:20	Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
My Top Rated	I The Pressman		5:11	Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
Recently Added	Mr. Krinkle		5:27	Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
Recently Played	. I The Air Is Get	ing Slippery	2:31	Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
Now Playing	- Hamburger Tr	ain O	8-11	Primus C	Pork Soda O	Metal	00000
	I Pork Chop's Li	ttle Ditty	1:03	Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
	i Hail Santa		1:50	Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
	E One Vision		5:10	Queen	A Kind Of Magic	Rock	
Nothing	A Kind Of Mag	pic .	4:24	Queen	A Kind Of Magic	Rock	
2223-2001 Pt 100 Pt	E One Year Of L	ove	4:28	Queen	A Kind Of Magic	Rock	
Playing	Pain Is So Close	e To Pleasure	4:23	Queen	A Kind Of Magic	Rock	
State (2015)	If Friends Will Be	Friends	4:04	Queen	A Kind Of Magic	Rock	
	R Who Wants To	Live Forever	5:16	Queen	A Kind Of Magic	Rock	
	Cimme The Pr	ire (Kurnan's Th	4.34	Queen	A Kind Of Magic	Rock	
	Concerns Decision of the second	A CONTRACTOR OF A CONTRACTOR O			A DESCRIPTION OF THE OWNER.	and the second second).s.()

Figure 12-9: Select songs that you want to add to the iPod.

000		iPort syn	Tunes c is com	plete.			-
	4		disconne	ict.	View	Search	
LIBRARY			. Car	lings Contents			
J Music	-	Name	and the second se	Contraction of the second	Album	Cenre	My R
Movies	22	I Take Me Out	3:56	Franz Ferdinand	Franz Ferdinand (S	Alternative	and a
TV Shows	23	If The Hand That Feeds	3:38	Nine Inch Nails	With Teeth	Industrial	
Podcasts	24	M Jerry Was A Race Car Driver	3:27	Primus	Metropolitan Expo	Primus	
PT ⁰ Radio	25	M Nature Boy	11:37	Primus	Metropolitan Expo	Primus	
A Habit	26	# Pork Chop's Little Ditty	0:21	Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
STORE	27	# My Name Is Mud	4:47	Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
Tunes Store	28	Welcome To This World	3:40	Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
Purchased	29	H Bob	4:40	Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
	30	R DMV	4:58	Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
* DEVICES	31	El Ol' Diamondback Sturgeon (Fis	4:40	Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
📱 Soren Under. 🙆	32	Wounded Knee	2:25	Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
* PLAYLISTS	33	🖬 Pork Soda	2:20	Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
Party Shuffle	34	# The Pressman	5:11	Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
S Party Shame	35	E Mr. Krinkle	5:27	Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
) Now Playing	36	The Air Is Getting Slippery O	2:31	Primus (O Pork Soda O	Metal	100
	37	El Hamburger Train	8:11	Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
	38	I Pork Chop's Little Ditty	1.03	Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
	39	iet Hail Santa	1:50	Primus	Pork Soda	Metal	
Nothing	40	M Amerika	3:46	Rammstein	Reise, Reise	Industrial	
	41	M Moskau	4:16	Rammstein	Reise Reise	Industrial	14.4
Playing	C	Autofill from: Music	n Autofilli	The second second second	items randomly higher rated items more	often	
+ × 0 0	-	44 songs, 2	9 hours.	200.9 MB	10	Computer \$	

Figure 12-10: Autofill quickly copies songs from your library to your iPod.

Adjust iPod Settings

- 1. Launch iTunes and connect the iPod to your computer.
- **2.** Click the iPod in the source pane, and then click the Settings tab in the main iTunes window.
- **3.** Scroll down the Settings window to the Options section, as shown in Figure 12-11.
- **4.** If you're concerned about storage space, place a check mark next to Convert Higher Bit Rate Songs to 128 kbps AAC for This iPod.
- **5.** Review other options and click Apply to save your changes to the iPod.

Delete Media from an iPod

- 1. Connect the iPod to your computer and launch iTunes.
- 2. Click the iPod in the Source pane to display its contents.
- **3.** Select a song or songs that you want to delete from the iPod.



To select multiple songs, hold down the ೫ key while clicking each song.

4. Press the Delete key or choose Edit → Delete, as shown in Figure 12-12.



Figure 12-11: Adjust settings for your iPod here.

000	Uni	do	₩Z		iTunes		_			
(44) (b) (b)	Cut		MX		nc is con		-	100 ALL AND D	Q,	
000	Co	DV.	#C	OK to	o disconr	nect.		View	Search	
33	Pas	te	34V	-						
Movies	Del	ete			54	ttings Con	tents			
TV Shows		ect All	¥A.		Time	Artist		Album	Genre	My Ratin
Podcasts		ect None	0 HA		3:57	Evanescence		Fallen	Rock/Pop	
Nel Radio	Jer	eccinone	UMA		3:57	Fatboy Slim		The Greatest Hits	Electronic	
	Spe	cial Charact	ers		3:56	Franz Ferdinan	d	Franz Ferdinand (S	Alternative	
STORE	and in				3:38	Nine Inch Nails	6	With Teeth	Industrial	
ITunes Store	24	I Jerry Was 4		ver	3:27	Primus		Metropolitan Expo	Primus	
Purchased	25				11:37	Primus		Metropolitan Expo		
	26	E Pork Chop	's Little Ditty		0:21	Primus		Pork Soda	Metal	
▼ DEVICES	27	I My Name I			4:47	Primus		Pork Soda	Metal	
Soren Under	28	M Welcome T	o This World		3:40	Primus		Pork Soda	Metal	
* PLAYLISTS	29	i Bob			4:40	Primus		Pork Soda	Metal	
S Party Shuffle	30	I DMV			4:58	Primus		Pork Soda	Metal	
90's Music	31	If Of Diamon		on (Fis	4:40	Primus		Pork Soda	Metal	
	32	If Wounded H	Cnee		2:25	Primus		Pork Soda	Metal	
JazzyStuff	33	Pork Soda			2:20	Primus		Pork Soda	Metal	
Music Videos	. 34	I The Pressn			5:11			Pork Soda	Metal	-
My Top Rated	• 35	B Mr. Krinkle			5:27	Primus		Pork Soda	Metal	
D Now Playing	36	E The Air Is I		ny .	2:31			Pork Soda	Metal	
	37	☑ Hamburge			8:11			Pork Soda	Metal	
	38	If Pork Chop	's Little Ditty	_		Primus	_	Pork Soda	Metal	
	39	P Hail Santa		0	1:50	Colored and a second	0	Pork Soda O Reise, Reise		
Nothing	40	I Amerika III Moskau			3:46	Rammstein			Industrial	
	41	MOSKau		_	4:16	Rammstein	_	Reise, Reise	industrial	14.4
Playing		Autofill	utofill from: V Replace all	CONTRACTOR OF A	Street Property			tems randomly higher rated items more	: often	- Carlin
+ 2 3				44 songs.	2.0 hours	200 Q ME	1021025		Computer	

Figure 12-12: Removing songs takes only seconds.

Store Data Files on Your iPod

- **1.** Open iPod settings, as described earlier in this chapter, and place a check mark next to Enable Disk Use.
- **2.** Adjust the Disk Use slider to determine how much space will be reserved for songs and data and then click OK to close the Settings window.
- **3.** Use the Finder to click and drag files to the iPod, as shown in Figure 12-13.
- **4.** Click and drag the iPod's Desktop icon to the Trash to manually eject the iPod.

Play Music on Your Stereo with AirTunes

- 1. Install and configure an AirTunes-compatible AirPort Base Station, as described in Chapter 17. The Base Station's documentation will note whether it supports AirTunes. Connect powered audio speakers or another audio device to the audio output on the AirPort Base Station.
- **2.** Open the Applications folder on your Mac, open the Utilities subfolder, and then double-click the AirPort Utility icon.
- **3.** Click the Base Station name, as shown in Figure 12-14, click Continue, and then choose Manual Setup in the message that appears.
- **4.** Enter the password for the Base Station and then click OK to log in to the Base Station.







When the iPod's status light glows solid green, it can be safely disconnected from the computer's USB port.

000	AirPort Utility	
KeithsOffice	Welcome to AirPort Utility.	
0	Base Station Name:	KeithsOffice
	IP Address:	192.168.0.100
	Version:	6.3
	AirPort ID:	00:14:51:76:CC:93
	the list on the left. If you don't	u want to set up, you can select another from see your has attaion, make sure it is plugged ter, and then click Rescan to try again.
	Click Continue to begin.	
	Rescan	Go Back Continue

Figure 12-14: Select the AirTunes-compatible Base Station and click Configure.



- 5. In the Base Station Configuration Utility, click Music to open AirTunes options.
- **6.** Place a check mark next to Enable AirTunes, as shown in Figure 12-15.
- 7. Provide a descriptive name for the speakers that are connected to the Base Station in the iTunes Speaker Name field.
- **8.** Click Update to upload your changes to the Base Station.
- 9. After the Base Station has restarted (its status light glows solid green), launch iTunes and find a playlist or songs that you want to play.
- 10. Choose the appropriate speakers from the Speakers menu at the bottom of the iTunes window, as shown in Figure 12-16.



To play music to multiple speaker locations, choose Multiple Speakers and then place a check mark next to each set of speakers listed in the resulting window.

000	AirPort Utility - KeithsOffice	
	o 🖲 🗊 🚔 😳	Setting Name
	AirPort Internet Music Printers Advanced	Find a setting
keithtoffica	This pane lets you configure your AirPor Enable AirTunes To play your iTunes music using this Air up menu at the bottom right of the iTune ITunes Speaker Name: iTunes Speaker Password: Verify Password:	Port Express, choose it from the pop- es window.
	•	Revert Update

Figure 12-15: Enable AirTunes on the Base Station.

000	iTune	5				
•••	Accessing iTur			iew Sea	rch	
LIERARY	Name	Time	Artist A	Album	Genre	
- El Music	Rhapsody in Blue	16:48	George Gershwin	American Portraits		in the
Movies	I Porgy And Bess (Melodies)	11:05	George Gershwin	American Portraits		
TV Shows	An American In Paris	17:55	George Gershwin	American Portraits-	Jazz	-11
	I Got Rhythm	9:31	George Gershwin	American Portraits		
Podcasts	🗟 Burn You	3:48	The Ray Charles Ma		Rock	- 8
™ Badio	🗟 Crazy	5:05	The Ray Charles Ma	Live @ Sam Bonds	Rock	
STORE	Eat Your Heart Out	3:18	The Ray Charles Ma		Rock	- 88
ITunes Store	🖬 Infinite	3:05	The Ray Charles Ma		Rock	
Ci mart start	🗑 Right On	8:11	The Ray Charles Ma	Live @ Sam Bonds	Rock	1
* PLAYLISTS	i Slowly	4:07	The Ray Charles Ma	Live @ Sam Bonds	Rock	1
Party Shuffle	iii El Camino	3:18	The Ray Charles Ma	TRCMFF live @ The	Rock	-
90's Music	W Verres Militares - War Pigs	3:27	Rondellus	Sabbatum	Classical	
a JazzyStuff	☑ Oculi Filioli – Junior's Eyes	5:33	Rondellus	Sabbatum	Classical	-
Music Videos	I Funambulus Domesticus - A N	6:13	Rondellus	Sabbatum	Classical	
	🗑 Symptoma Mundi - Symptom	4:44	Rondellus	Sabbatum	Classical	
My Top Rated	M Post Murum Somnii - Behind T	5:00	Rondellus Rondellus	Sabbatum	Classical	
Recently Added	Post Aeternitatem - After Fore	3:42	Rondellus	Sabbatum	Classical	1
Recently Played	層 Magus - The Wizard 麗 Solitudo - Solitude	3.51	Rondellus	Sabbatum	Classical	18
Top 25 Most Played	Solitudo - Solitude	3:50	Kondelius	Sabbatum	Classical	
	īΤ	un	es Stor	e		
+ × 0 0	35 songs, 3 hours, 1	72.7 MH		40 ≠ Computer]
				KeithsOffice		
				Multiple Speak	ers	
				•		Ú.
- iaure 12-16: Sele	ct the AirTunes speakers	5.			- 11	
-g						

Figure 12-16: Select the AirTunes speakers.



Working with Third Party MP3 Players

When it comes to MP3 players, Macs and iPods seem to go hand-inhand. But lots of MP3 players are made by companies other than Apple, and if you're reading this chapter, you probably have one of these third-party players.

Because you have one of these players, you may be wondering if it's compatible with your Mac, especially if the player's instructions only tell you how to use it with a Windows PC. Fortunately, most MP3 players can be used with a Mac, although you probably can't use iTunes for copying media files and playlists directly to the player. Instead, you'll have to use the Finder. This chapter shows you how to

- Connect a third-party MP3 player to your Mac.
- ➡ Copy music files to the MP3 player.
- Create folders on the MP3 player in which to organize media.
- ➡ Delete music from the MP3 player.



The steps in this chapter apply to most third-party MP3 players, but it's possible that your particular player is uniquely incompatible with your Mac. Some players require proprietary software in order to access directories and copy files to the player. If you can't seem to follow the steps in this chapter with your MP3 player, check the manufacturer's Web site for special instructions or information regarding Mac compatibility. A few third-party players actually support iTunes. If you connect the player to your computer and it appears in the Devices list in iTunes, you should be able to use iTunes (see Chapter 12) to manage media on the player.



Get ready to . . .

- → Copy Music Files to the Player133

Connect the MP3 Player to Your Mac

- 1. Connect the MP3 player to your Mac's Universal Serial Bus (USB) port.
- **2.** Look for the player's icon to appear on your Desktop as an Untitled disk volume, as shown in Figure 13-1.



If the MP3 player doesn't appear, make sure the unit's power is turned on.

3. Before disconnecting the MP3 player from your USB port, drag its icon to the Trash icon on the Dock to unmount the volume. When the MP3 player's icon no longer appears on the Desktop, the MP3 player can be safely disconnected from the USB port.

Check for iTunes Compatibility

- **1.** To see if your MP3 player is compatible with iTunes, first check the player's documentation.
- 2. If the documentation is unclear, visit the Web site:

```
docs.info.apple.com/article.html?
artnum=93548
```

This site lists some iTunes compatible players, as shown in Figure 13-2.

3. Visit the manufacturer's Web site for OS X downloads for your MP3 player.



Although some third-party MP3 players may work with iTunes, keep in mind that unlike iPods — most other MP3 players — can't play AAC files. This means that songs purchased from the iTunes store won't work in most third-party MP3 players. For other music, convert it to MP3 format before copying it to a third-party MP3 player.

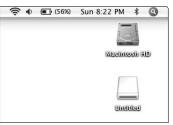


Figure 13-1: Third-party MP3 players should appear as Untitled volumes.

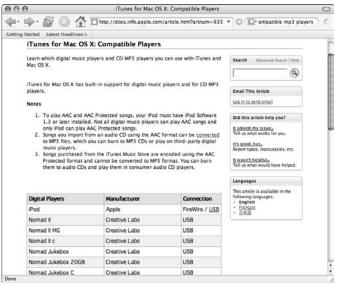


Figure 13-2: Apple's Web site lists some iTunes-compatible players.

Copy Music Files to the Player

- 1. Connect the MP3 player to your USB port.
- **2.** Launch iTunes and arrange the windows so that you can see iTunes and the MP3 player icon at the same time, as shown in Figure 13-3.
- **3.** Select the song or songs that you want to copy to the player.



If you're not sure whether a song's format is compatible with your MP3 player, select the song in iTunes and press \Re +1. An Info window opens, showing you information about the song, including the file format. MP3 files should be compatible with any MP3 player, but AAC files are usually compatible only with iPods.

- **4.** Click and drag the songs to the MP3 player's icon, as shown in Figure 13-3. A progress window displays the file copying progress.
- **5.** If you don't use iTunes to organize your music, use the Finder to copy files instead. Open a Finder window, browse to the file you want to copy to the MP3 player, and then click and drag the file to the MP3 player, as shown in Figure 13-4.



You can also copy files from your MP3 player to your hard drive with the Finder; simply drag and drop files from the player to a hard drive folder to copy them. If some of the files are in WMA format, you must download and install Windows Media Player or Flip4Mac, as described in Chapter 14.

Source Name		Pompeli 19 Fingers		0	Q				
Distance Mappy	1000 BC 80			-3:38	2	Search		۲	
				Artist	*	Album	-	Genre	
# Podcasta # House		0		49 Fingers	0			m	
		0		49 Fingers	0		_		4 fumpel
ill Videos		•		49 Fingers	0	2			A Designed
Party Shuffle W # She Sa	nys I JandsExhortation	0		49 Fingers Annwyn	00				Untitled
. 400	BediamBoys	0		Annayn	0			_	
elli where store	CliffsOfMoher	ő		Annwyn	ŏ			_	
	PenguinLust	õ		Anneyn	õ				
	est Ye Merry Gentlem			Barenaked Ladies		Barenaked for th.	0	Christ	
ef Cin an		ö		Barenaked Ladies				Other	
ef Drive I	My Car	0	2:30	The Beatles	0	Rubber Soul	0	Rock	
If Norwe	gian Wood (This Bird	0	2:05	The Beatles	0	Rubber Soul	0	Rock	
Nothing	are Man	0	2:44	The Beatles	0	Rubber Soul	0	Rock	
# Think	For Yourself	0	2:19	The Beatles		Rubber Soul	Ô	Rock	
Selected of The W		0		The Beatles		Rubber Soul	0	Rock	
≝ Michel	le l	0		The Beatles		Rubber Soul	0	Rock	
i Gri		0	2:33	The Beatles	0	Rubber Soul	0	Rock .	
				-	-	A. C. A. L	-	3414	
+ × 0 0	121 songs.	7.7 bears.	524.9	MB		(m) !!! (c)			
		-	Statistics.		100	Frank Frank Par	-	-	
		_	_	_		_	-	_	

Figure 13-3: Click and drag songs from iTunes to your MP3 player.



Figure 13-4: You can also copy music with the Finder.



Create Folders on the Player

- 1. Connect the MP3 player to your USB port and then double-click the player's icon to begin browsing it in the Finder.
- 2. If the files are disorganized and scattered all over the window especially likely if the MP3 player has been used on a Windows PC choose View⇔Clean Up, as shown in Figure 13-5.
- **3.** To create a new folder, press **#**+Shift+N or choose File → New Folder.
- 4. Type a new name for the folder, as shown in Figure 13-6.
- *5.* Use the Finder to copy files into the new folder, as described in the preceding section.
- **6.** Unmount the MP3 player and disconnect it from the USB port.
- **7.** Test the MP3 player to make sure that audio files placed in subfolders are recognized and play properly. Some MP3 players may not be able to play files that are placed in subfolders.



134

Many MP3 players can be used as Thumb drives in a pinch. That is, if you have some files, such as PowerPoint presentations or Pages documents, and you need to quickly copy those files to another computer, you can copy the files to the storage area on an MP3 player and then connect the MP3 player to the other computer to retrieve the files.

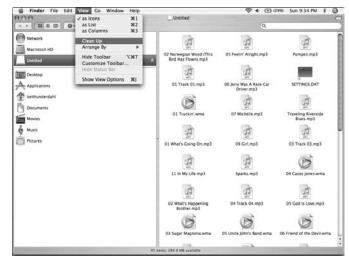


Figure 13-5: Use the Finder to browse your MP3 player.



Figure 13-6: Create folders to organize files on your MP3 player.

Delete Files from the Player

- 1. Connect the MP3 player to your USB port and then double-click the player's icon to begin browsing it in the Finder.
- **2.** Select a file or folder that you want to delete and then click and drag it to the Trash, as shown in Figure 13-7.



To select multiple files or folders, hold down the \Re key and click each item that you want to select.

- 3. Press ಱ+Shift+Delete or choose Finder⇔Empty Trash.
- **4.** Click OK to confirm that you want to empty the Trash, as shown in Figure 13-8.



Make sure you empty the Trash before unmounting the MP3 player. If you leave Trash items on the MP3 player, the player may not play music properly and Windows users may have problems with the player's file system.





Figure 13-8: Make sure you empty the Trash before unmounting the MP3 player.





Watching Videos and DVDs

stroll around your local electronics store reveals a lot of cool digital gadgets, including TVs, stereo systems, and DVD players. Thankfully, you don't need any of those things because you have a Mac. Every new Macintosh comes with built-in DVD player hardware and software, and if you have a laptop, your Mac even doubles as a really nice portable DVD player.

Of course, DVDs aren't the only kinds of videos that you'll want to watch on your Mac. You may also download videos from the Internet or you may want to watch videos recorded by a digital camera or camera phone.

This chapter shows you how to watch DVDs on your Mac as well as how to watch other types of video. This chapter focuses on three specific programs:

- ➡ DVD Player: As the name implies, this is the program that allows your Mac to play movie DVDs.
- QuickTime: QuickTime is a popular program from Apple that allows you to watch videos in various formats, including MPEG and QuickTime video.
- ➡ Flip4Mac: This free program works as a plug-in for QuickTime and allows you to watch most Windows Media Video (WMV) on your Mac.



Get ready to . . .

→ Change the Default DVD Player	138
Access DVD Features	139
➡ Modify DVD Player Settings	140
www Watch Movies with QuickTime	141
➡ Adjust QuickTime Settings	142
🗝 Update QuickTime	142
➡ Install Flip4Mac	143
··→ View Windows Media Video	
with Flip4Mac	144

Change the Default DVD Player

- Choose Apple⁺>System Preferences (or open System Preferences from the Dock) and then click the CDs & DVDs icon to open CD & DVD preferences, as shown in Figure 14-1.
- **2.** Make a selection in the When You Insert a Video DVD menu. The choices are
 - **Open DVD Player:** This is the default choice, and it is probably the best choice unless you prefer another third-party DVD player application.
 - **Open Front Row:** This is Leopard's multimedia interface. If your Mac has an Apple Remote, the remote's Menu button activates Front Row.
 - **Open Other Application**: Choose this to select a different application; then browse to an alternate DVD player, as shown in Figure 14-2, and click Choose.
 - **Run Script:** Choose this if you have a DVD-related AppleScript that you want to run when you insert DVDs.
 - **Ignore:** If you don't want anything to happen automatically when you insert a DVD, choose Ignore.



Even if you choose Ignore, you can easily watch DVD movies by manually opening DVD Player from the Applications folder.

3. Close System Preferences after you make a selection.



Figure 14-1: The OS X DVD Player application is the default choice for video DVDs.

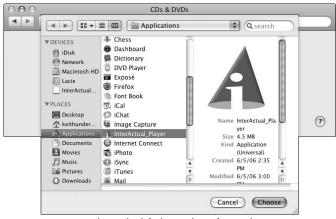


Figure 14-2: You can change the default DVD player if you wish.

Access DVD Features

- **1.** Insert a movie DVD into your DVD drive. The DVD Player application starts automatically, and the movie plays.
- If the movie opens in a small window, like the one shown in Figure 14-3, choose Videot⇒Enter Full Screen or press #+F. Press #+F again to leave Full Screen mode.
- **3.** Move the mouse pointer to the bottom of the screen to reveal the DVD Controller, as shown in Figure 14-4.



If the Controller doesn't appear, hover the mouse pointer near the top of the screen and choose Window=>Show Controller in the menu bar that appears.

4. Use the Play, Stop, Forward, and Back buttons to control playback. Click Menu or Title to open the DVD menu (the exact menu that opens varies, depending on the DVD) and use the arrow buttons to navigate DVD menus.



Unless you have a tray-loading DVD drive (found only on Mac Pros, Power Macs, and some external drives), don't attempt to insert a 3.5" mini-DVD into your Mac's DVD drive. Mini-DVDs aren't compatible with the slot-loading drives found on iMacs, Mac Minis, and portable Macs.



Figure 14-3: The DVD Player can float over your desktop, just like other applications.



Figure 14-4: Use the controls to take command of DVD features.

Modify DVD Player Settings

- 1. Open the DVD Player application.
- **2.** Choose DVD Player Preferences. If the menu bar is hidden, hover the mouse pointer near the top of the screen.
- **3.** In the Player screen, choose whether you want DVD Player to open automatically in Full Screen mode and start playing when you insert a disc.
- **4.** Click Disc Setup and select default languages, as shown in Figure 14-5. If you're using external audio speakers, select the speakers in the Audio Output menu.



If you're using System Sound Output on a laptop, don't place a check mark next to Disable Dolby Dynamic Range Compression. Disabling this option could damage your laptop's small speakers.

- *5.* Click Full Screen and choose how long you want to wait before the Controller disappears.
- **6.** Click Windows and change the appearance of Closed Captioning text if you wish.
- **7.** Click Previously Viewed and select a default behavior for previously viewed DVDs.
- **8.** If your Mac has a High Definition (HD) compatible DVD player, click High Definition and choose a picture height that matches your display, as shown in Figure 14-6.
- 9. Click OK to close the Preferences window.



If you see horizontal lines in the video during playback (especially on fast-moving subjects), choose Video=>Deinterlace to enable or disable interlacing. Deinterlacing is often necessary when watching video DVDs on non-interlaced displays, such as computer monitors.

Disc Setup
🕸 💽 🕂 🔛 🔇 🚥
Player Disc Setup Full Screen Windows Previously Viewed High Definition
Language
Audio: English
Subtitle: English
DVD menu: English
Internet: 🗌 Enable DVD@ccess web links
Audio
Audio output: System Sound Output
Disable Dolby dynamic range compression
(Cancel) (OK)

Figure 14-5: Select default languages for DVD Player.



Figure 14-6: DVD Player supports HD playback.

Watch Movies with QuickTime

1. Launch QuickTime by clicking its icon on the Dock or double-click the QuickTime icon in the Applications folder.



If you double-click a movie that is compatible with QuickTime — compatible formats include MPEG and QT — QuickTime launches automatically and plays the video.

- 2. To open a movie, choose File=>Open File.
- **3.** In the Open window that appears (as shown in Figure 14-7), browse to the movie you want to view.
- **4.** Select the movie file and click Open. If the movie is in a format that isn't supported by QuickTime, an error message appears advising you of this fact.
- *5.* Use the playback controls to play the movie, as shown in Figure 14-8.



For advanced playback controls, choose Window=>Show A/V Controls. The A/V Controls allow you to adjust color, light, contrast, audio characteristics, and playback speed.



To change the size of the video image, open the View menu and choose Half Size, Actual Size, Double Size, or Fit to Screen. You can also click and drag the bottom-right corner of the QuickTime window to dynamically resize it.



QuickTime offers an online content guide with links to movie trailers, music videos, and other entertainments. To open the content guide, open QuickTime and choose Window=>Show Content Guide.

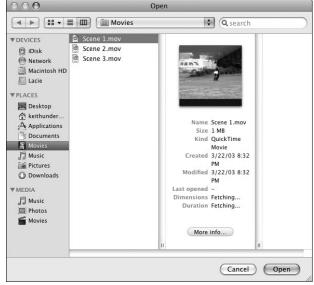


Figure 14-7: Locate the movie you want to view.



Figure 14-8: QuickTime offers a simple, friendly interface.



Adjust QuickTime Settings

- **1.** Open QuickTime and choose QuickTime Player Preferences.
- **2.** In the Preferences window, as shown in Figure 14-9, adjust general QuickTime Preferences as follows:
 - If you don't want to spawn a new window every time you open another movie, deselect Open Movies in New Players.
 - Deselect Show Equalizer if you find the graphic equalizer display distracting.
 - If you don't want the Content Guide to appear when you open QuickTime, deselect Show Content Guide Automatically.



For additional QuickTime settings, click the QuickTime icon in System Preferences. There you can change disk cache settings (the cache is where downloaded movies are stored) and other basic QuickTime characteristics.

Update QuickTime

- **1.** Open QuickTime and choose QuickTime Player=>Update Existing Software.
- **2.** In the Software Update window that appears, as shown in Figure 14-10, review available updates.
- **3.** If a QuickTime update is available, select it and click Install.



For more on using Software Update, see Chapter 4.

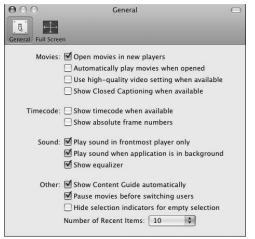


Figure 14-9: Adjust general QuickTime preferences here.

(\mathbf{O})	New software is available for If you're not ready to install now, you preference to check for updates later.	can use the S	
Install	Name	Version	Size
	Pages Update	1.0.2	28.7 MB
	GarageBand Update	2.0.2	14.6 MB
	J2SE 5.0 Release 4	4.0	39.3 MB
	QuickTime	7.1.6	45.1 MB
	Security Update 2007-006 (Po	1.0	3.4 MB
Final Cut	7.1.6 delivers numerous bug fixes, sue with QuickTime for Java and Incli Studio 2 e and closed captioning display in O	udes suppor	t for:
Final Cut Timecod This updat mportant QuickTime of QuickTi his install	sue with QuickTime for Java and inclu Studio 2	udes suppor uickTime Pla 7 users. actionality in me 6. If you :kTime 7 Pro	t for: yer prior versions proceed with

Figure 14-10: Use Software Update to check for QuickTime updates.

Install Flip4Mac

- 1. Visit www.flip4mac.com, click the Download link, and then click the Flip4Mac WMV link.
- 2. Click the Get WMV Player Free link.
- **3.** When you're redirected to the Microsoft Web site, click the Free Download link. Read any instructions that appear and click Download.
- **4.** If you see the file download dialog, select Save to Disk and click OK.
- **5.** When the download is complete, double-click the downloaded disk image (the icon has . dmg at the end of the file name).



If you use Safari to download Flip4Mac, Step 5 is unnecessary because the disk image mounts automatically.

- **6.** If the Flip4Mac WMV disk image doesn't open automatically, double-click its icon on the Desktop.
- **7.** Double-click the Flip4Mac installer package and follow the instructions onscreen to install, as shown in Figure 14-11. When you get to the Installation Type screen, click Customize to select options, as shown in Figure 14-12.
- **8.** Click Install to begin installation and click Close when installation is complete.



If you have Microsoft Windows Media Player for OS X installed on your computer, upgrade to Flip4Mac. Microsoft no longer supports Windows Media Player for OS X, so it doesn't play the latest Windows Media formats.



Figure 14-11: Save the download file to disk.

000	🥪 Install Flip4Mac WMV		
	Custom Install on "Macintosh	HD"	
	Package Name	Action	Size
Introduction	☑ QuickTime Components	Install	16.9 MB
⊖ Read Me	Web Browser Support	Install	572 KB
License			
Destination Select			
Installation Type			
Installation			
Summary			
1.00/1/1			
slip4Mac			
	Space Required: 17.5 MB	Remaining: 59.7	GB
WMV			
	(Standard Install)	Go Back	Install

Figure 14-12: Customize Flip4Mac installation options.

View Windows Media Video with Flip4Mac

- 1. To open a Windows Media file, either
 - Double-click a Windows Media file. (Windows Media Audio has the .wma file name extension, and Windows Media Video has the .wmv file name extension.)
 - Open QuickTime and choose File Open to locate a Windows Media file, as shown in Figure 14-13.
- **2.** Use the playback controls to play the Windows Media Video in QuickTime, as shown in Figure 14-14.



144

If you want to edit Windows Media Video in iMovie or QuickTime, play Windows Media in your iPod, or convert Windows Media to other formats, you can purchase WMV Player Pro from Flip4Mac for \$29. Other versions are also available; click the WMV Products link on the Flip4Mac Web site to discover more.

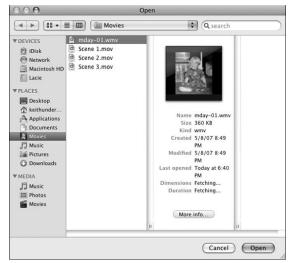


Figure 14-13: Browse to the Windows Media file you want to view.



Figure 14-14: Flip4Mac lets QuickTime view Windows Media.

Viewing, Organizing, and Improving Pictures

t's hard to imagine now how anyone ever got by without digital cameras. Back in the days of film cameras, photo processing was expensive and slow, and if you wanted to improve the quality of your photos, you had to just shoot a lot of (expensive) pictures and become a better photographer.

A digital camera won't make you a great photographer, but it will definitely make your life easier. Not only can you snap many photos without worrying about processing fees, but you can quickly copy your digital images to your computer where they can be easily reshaped, retouched, and shared with others via e-mail or the Internet.

This chapter shows you how to organize your photos with iPhoto, a program included free with your Mac. In addition to organizing photos, iPhoto can also make basic edits and improvements to photos. This chapter also introduces you to Adobe Photoshop Elements, a slightly more advanced photo editing program available for less than \$100 for your Mac at most Apple and computer retailers.



If you need an online home for sharing your digital photos with others over the Internet, check out Chapter 9.

Chapter 15

Get ready to . . .

→ Launch iPhoto146
Download Photos from a Camera146
🗝 Organize Your Photo Library147
··→ Rotate Photos148
··→ Resize Images148
➡ Create a Slideshow150
Install Adobe Photoshop Elements151
Resize an Image in Adobe Photoshop152
Hard States and States
Export a Photoshop Image for the Web154

Launch iPhoto

- To launch iPhoto, either click the iPhoto icon on the Dock (the iPhoto icon looks like a camera in front of a picture) or open the Applications folder and double-click iPhoto.
- **2.** If you're launching iPhoto for the first time, you're asked if you want to use iPhoto when you connect a digital camera to the computer, as shown in Figure 15-1. Click a button to make a choice.
- **3.** If you see an iPhoto Update window, click Learn More to download the update or click Cancel if you don't want to update at this time.



To quickly check for iPhoto updates, open iPhoto and then choose iPhoto=>Check for Updates.

Download Photos from a Camera

- 1. Connect your digital camera to your computer's Universal Serial Bus (USB) port and then turn on the camera.
- **2.** When iPhoto switches to Import mode, as shown in Figure 15-2, type a name and description for the roll.

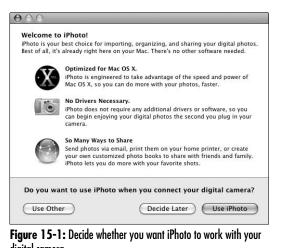


If iPhoto doesn't switch automatically to Import mode, make sure your digital camera is turned on and in Photo Viewing mode. If the camera is in Picture Taking mode, iPhoto can't import photos from it.

3. Click Import to begin importing photos from your camera.



To import pictures that are already on your hard drive, choose File⇔Add to Library. Use the Finder to find and import photos.



iPhoto	File	Edit	Photos	Share	View	Window	Help	Construction of the second sec	1	40	1	Ş	۵	Sun	5:47 PM	Q
00		11000						Photo				. C. P.	-	-		_
Saure Ulivery Ulivery Licas 12 South 27 Michael South 27 Michael South Washington DC Trash																
							F	leady to import 46 item	15.							
			n: 6/27/06 n: 6/28/06		Roll Descr	Name:				_	_	_	_	_		_
								C Dele	te items fror	n cam	ira afte	r imp	arting	Ē	Import	
+ 0 -	- 11							46 photos							_	. 13

Figure 15-2: Enter a roll name and click Import.

Organize Your Photo Library

- **1.** Launch iPhoto and then click Library in the Source pane on the left side of the screen to view your entire Photo Library, as shown in Figure 15-3.
- 2. To create a new album in which to organize certain pictures, choose File⇔New Album and then type a descriptive name for the album.
- **3.** Click and drag photos from the Library window to the new album. In Figure 15-4, a new album named Brownsville was created.



To copy multiple photos, first click and drag a box around all the photos you want to move. Alternatively, hold down the \Re key and click individual pictures that you want to select. When a group is selected, you can then click and drag that group to a new album.

- **4.** Click the name of an album to view its contents, as shown in Figure 15-4.
- To change the size of photo thumbnails, click and drag the Zoom slider in the lower-right corner of the iPhoto screen. In Figure 15-4, the thumbnail size was increased.
- 6. To display file names for photos, as shown in Figure 15-4, choose View[±]√Titles.



You can also choose to display keywords, film rolls, and ratings from the View menu.

7. To delete a photo, simply drag it to the Trash icon in the Source pane on the left side of the iPhoto screen.



Figure 15-3: Click Library to view all your photos.



Figure 15-4: Organize your photos into albums.

Rotate Photos

- **1.** Locate an image that you want to rotate and doubleclick the image to open it in the Editing window, as shown in Figure 15-5.
- **2.** Click the Rotate button at the bottom of the Editing window to rotate the image.



You may need to click Rotate a couple times to get the desired orientation.

3. Click Done to save your changes.

Resize Images

- 1. Select a photo that you want to export in a smaller size.
- 2. Choose Share ⇒ Export.
- **3.** Select Scale Images No Larger Than and enter a maximum width and/or height, as shown in Figure 15-6.
- 4. Click Export.
- *5.* Enter a new file name, choose a location for the resized image, and click OK.



Most Internet users don't have nice, big Apple displays, so the two most common screen resolutions for Internet users are 1024×768 and 800×600 . Because of this, resize images you plan to share online so that they can be viewed easily at these resolutions.



Figure 15-5: Images can be easily rotated.



Figure 15-6: Photos can be exported in smaller, Web-friendly sizes.



Crop Images

- **1.** Locate the image you want to crop and click it once to select it.
- **2.** Choose Photos Duplicate to create a copy of the image.
- 3. Double-click the copy to open it in the Editing window.
- **4.** Click and drag a rectangle over the area of the photo that you want to keep, as shown in Figure 15-7. Areas outside the rectangle will be cropped.



It's best to start with a relatively large image; if you crop smaller images, the resulting cropped image may be too small.

- *5.* Click the Crop button on the toolbar at the bottom of the Editing window, as shown in Figure 15-8.
- *6.* After you're done editing the image, click Done to close the Editing window.



If you don't like the changes you've made to an image, select the image in your Library and choose Photos=>Revert to Original.



Figure 15-7: Select the cropping area.



Figure 15-8: Click Crop to crop the image.

Create a Slideshow

- **1.** Open iPhoto and select a picture roll or album from which you want to base your slideshow.
- **2.** Click Slideshow near the bottom of the iPhoto window. A new slideshow is created, as shown in Figure 15-9, and it contains all the images in the roll or album you selected in Step 1.
- **3.** To remove an image from the slideshow, click and drag it to the Trash icon in the Source pane.
- **4.** To add photos from other albums or rolls, simply click and drag the photos to the desired slideshow in the Source pane.



To change the order of images, click and drag their thumbnails left or right at the top of the Slideshow window.

- **5.** Click a photo in the slideshow and then choose None, Black and White, or Sepia from the Effect menu to change that photo.
- *6.* Choose a transition to use between photos in the Transitions menu or choose the default Dissolve transition.
- **7.** Place a check mark next to Ken Burns Effect to create a subtle zooming effect on your images.
- **8.** To change the display time for each photo, click Settings and enter a new time, as shown in Figure 15-10. Click OK to close the Settings window.
- **9.** Click Play to play the slideshow. To stop the slideshow, simply click anywhere on an image during the show.



To add a musical soundtrack to your slideshow, click Music and then choose a song or playlist from your iTunes Library.



Figure 15-9: Quickly create slideshows based on your rolls or albums.

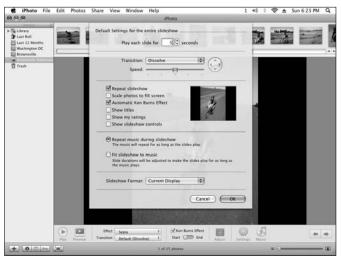


Figure 15-10: You can change the display time for each image.

Install Adobe Photoshop Elements

- **1.** Quit all open applications and then insert the Adobe Photoshop Elements installation CD into your disc drive.
- 2. Double-click the disc's icon to open the Disc window.
- **3.** Double-click the Install Adobe Photoshop Elements icon, as shown in Figure 15-11, and follow the instructions onscreen to accept the license agreement and complete installation.



Remember, you'll need an administrator's name and password to install the software.

- **4.** Restart your computer when you're prompted to do so. You can safely eject the Adobe installation disc after the restart.
- **5.** Open the Applications folder and then double-click the Adobe Photoshop Elements folder to open it.
- *6.* Double-click the Photoshop Elements icon and then choose an option in the Welcome screen, as shown in Figure 15-12. The options are
 - Start from Scratch: Choose this if you just want to open Elements without opening an image file.
 - Browse with Adobe Bridge: Choose this to browse to an image file. Adobe Bridge is similar to the Apple Finder, but with picture browsing features similar to iPhoto.
 - Import from Camera or Scanner: This choice helps you quickly import images from a camera or scanner.
 - **Recent Images:** Click the name of a recently edited image (if any are listed) to re-open the image.



To add Photoshop Elements to the Dock, click and drag the Application icon to the Dock.

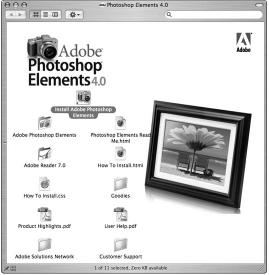


Figure 15-11: Double-click the Install icon to begin installation.

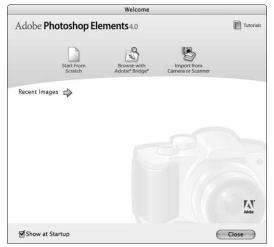


Figure 15-12: Use the Photoshop Elements icon to launch the program.

151

Resize an Image in Adobe Photoshop

1. Open an image file with Adobe Bridge.



If you don't like using Adobe Bridge, open Photoshop and simply choose File=>Open. You can then browse to files with the Finder instead of Adobe Bridge.

- 2. Choose Image Aresize → Image Size, as shown in Figure 15-13.
- **3.** In the Image Size dialog that appears, place a check mark next to Resample Image, as shown in Figure 15-14.
- **4.** Enter a new size with pixel dimensions in the upper half of the Image Size dialog, as shown in Figure 15-14, or enter a new document size in the lower half of the dialog.



If you're resizing the image for Web or computer screen use, change the pixel dimensions. If you're resizing the image for later printing, use the document size section. If the image will be printed, change the resolution to 300 pixels per inch before reducing the document size. This ensures the best possible print quality.



In most cases, leave Constrain Proportions checked. If you deselect this option, the image appears distorted after resizing.

5. Click OK.



Ø

To crop an image, click and drag a box on the image and choose Image⊏≎Crop.

When you crop or reduce the size of an image, make sure you choose File=>Save As and save the file with a different file name. If you save the original file, you'll lose some of the original image quality and you can never get it back.



Figure 15-13: Choose Image=>Resize=>Image Size to begin resizing.

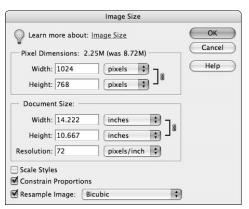


Figure 15-14: Select Resample Image and then enter a new size.

Improve Color with Photoshop

- 1. Open the image that you want to improve.
- 2. Choose File Save As and save a copy of the image using a new file name. In the Save As dialog, choose Photoshop in the Format menu.
- **3.** Open the Enhance menu, as shown in Figure 15-15, and then choose something that you want to improve. The choices are
 - Auto Smart Fix: Quickly make common image adjustments
 - Auto Levels: Fine-tunes color, light, and contrast
 - Auto Contrast: Improves contrast and light
 - Auto Color Correction: Adjusts and improves color
 - Auto Red Eye Fix: Removes red dots from subjects' eyes



No single enhancement will improve every image. If you don't like the changes made by an enhancement, press \Re +Z to undo the change and then try a different enhancement.

- **4.** To fine-tune light and contrast, choose Enhance-⇒Adjust Lighting-⇒Brightness/Contrast. Use the sliders to make fine adjustments and preview the changes in the background. Click OK to accept your changes or click Cancel to reject them.
- **5.** To fine-tune color, choose Enhance Adjust Color Color Variations. Click sample images to choose variations, as shown in Figure 15-16. Click OK to accept your changes or click Cancel to reject them.



Figure 15-15: Use the Enhance menu to make quick image enhancements.

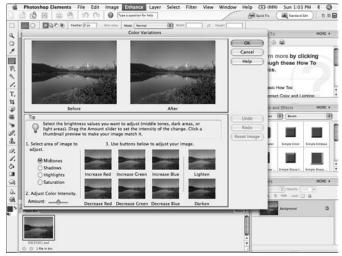


Figure 15-16: The Color Variations tool helps you quickly make color changes.

Export a Photoshop Image for the Web

- 1. After you're done enhancing and improving an image, choose File ⇒Save for Web, as shown in Figure 15-17.
- **2.** In the Save for Web window that appears, as shown in Figure 15-18, choose a preset format in the Preset menu on the right.



The GIF format is better for smaller images that have less color. Larger photos should be saved in JPEG format. The PNG format offers good quality but limited compatibility with some Web browsers (notably, Internet Explorer 6 and older).

- **3.** Choose sub-options below the Preset menu, such as quality levels.
- **4.** Enter a new size for the image in the Width and Height fields below New Size, as shown in Figure 15-18.
- 5. After entering a new size, click Apply.
- *6.* Note the file size listed below the image preview on the right side of the Save for Web preview window. This will be the approximate file size of the image when you export it.



Pay careful attention to the file size and estimated download time for the image. Remember, many people still have relatively slow dial-up Internet connections, so they'll have a hard time viewing large image files.

7. Click OK.

154

8. Enter a file name and choose a location in the Save Optimized As dialog and then click Save to save the file.



Figure 15-17: Choose File=>Save for Web to save a Web image.

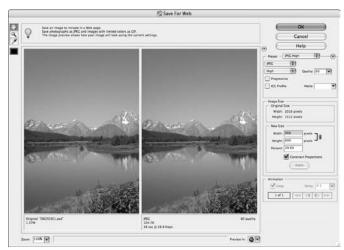


Figure 15-18: Select a format and size for the exported image here.

Making Movies

A pple has been a pioneer in digital video for over a decade. In the 1990s, Apple helped develop the *IEEE-1394 FireWire interface*, a high-speed data bus that allows high-quality digital video to be transferred quickly between digital camcorders and computers. Apple also pioneered software that helps you turn your raw video footage into a great movie with titles, music, and special effects.

Every new Macintosh computer comes with a FireWire port and iMovie preinstalled. The iMovie application allows you to import video from a digital camcorder, assemble a movie with only the scenes you want, add sound and video effects to your movie clips, and export your finished movie for viewing over the Internet or back to videotape. And if your Mac has a SuperDrive, you can also burn your movie straight to DVD.

This chapter shows you how to make movies with your digital camcorder and iMovie. Tasks show you how to create a new movie project, capture video from your camcorder, and turn your footage into a great movie. Tasks also show you how to export your finished movie in a Web-friendly format or burn it to DVD.



When buying a new camcorder, avoid cameras that use DVDs or mini DVDs as their recording medium. DVD-based camcorders often lack FireWire ports and usually aren't Mac-compatible. Digital camcorders that use MiniDV tapes and have FireWire ports are always Mac-compatible, and they offer the best balance of quality and value. For more on making movies and working with iMovie, check out *Digital Video For Dummies, 4th Edition,* by Keith Underdahl (Wiley Publishing, Inc.).

Chapter 16

Get ready to . . .

→ Launch iMovie	156
➡ Capture Video from a Camcorder	157
➡ Assemble Clips into a Movie	158
➡ Trim Clips on the Timeline	159
⊶ Add a Soundtrack	160
➡ Insert Sound Effects	161
➡ Apply Video Effects	162
High Insert Transitions between Clips	163
➡ Add Titles to Your Movie	164
➡ Export the Movie for Web Viewing	165
➡ Burn the Movie to DVD	166

Launch iMovie

1. Click the iMovie HD icon on the Dock or double-click the iMovie HD icon in the Applications folder.



You can also open iMovie by double-clicking an iMovie project file.

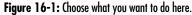
- **2.** Choose an option in the window, as shown in Figure 16-1. The options include
 - Create a New Project: Choose this to create a new movie from scratch. When you create a new project, provide a name for the new project, as shown in Figure 16-2. You can also choose a different format by clicking the arrow next to Video Format and choosing a different format, as shown in Figure 16-2.



The selection in the Video Format menu should match the format recorded by your camera. Most consumer MiniDV cameras use the DV format. If you're importing video, the Video Format menu should match the format of the file you wish to import.

- **Open an Existing Project:** Choose this to open a movie that you worked on and saved. A dialog box opens allowing you to browse to your movie project file.
- Make a Magic iMovie: Choose this to let iMovie automatically create a movie for you. Make sure your camcorder is connected to your computer's FireWire port and turned on to Player or VTR mode before choosing the Magic iMovie option.







To quickly open a recent project while working in iMovie, choose File=>Open Recent.

ngeRiders		_
Movies	•	
deo format		
DV	•	
	ormat compatible	
-	Movies deo format DV s the primary video f most camcorders.	deo format DV :

Figure 16-2: The video format should match the format of your camcorder.

150

Capture Video from a Camcorder

- **1.** Launch iMovie and create a new project, as described in the preceding section.
- **2.** Connect your camcorder to your computer's FireWire port and make sure that the camcorder is turned on to Player or VTR mode.



Some camcorders may use a different name for the FireWire port, such as DV, IEEE-1394, or i.Link.

3. In iMovie, move the control switch from Edit to Import.



The control switch is located below the main Preview window, and has a camera icon on one side and a scissors icon on the other. Move this switch to the camera icon to capture video, or to the scissor icon to edit your movie.

- **4.** When the Preview screen turns blue and says Camera Connected, as shown in Figure 16-3, click the Play button to start playing the tape in the camcorder.
- *5.* Use the playback controls to play, pause, fast forward, and rewind the video to find scenes that you want to capture.
- **6.** Rewind to slightly before the second of video that you want to capture and then click the Import button on the Preview screen. Captured video clips appear in the Clips pane, as shown in Figure 16-4.
- 7. Click Stop when you're done capturing.



To change the way iMovie captures video, choose iMovie HD⊏>Preferences and then click Import. There you can choose whether clips are created automatically and other settings.



Figure 16-3: The camera is connected, and iMovie is ready to capture video.



Figure 16-4: Captured video clips are stored in the Clips pane.

Assemble Clips into a Movie

- **1.** Open a movie project with captured video, as described earlier in this chapter.
- **2.** If iMovie isn't already in Editing mode, move the Control slider to Edit (it looks like scissors).
- **3.** Click a clip in the Clips pane and then click Play below the Preview window to play the clip.
- **4.** If you want to split a clip in half, pause playback at the point where you want to split the clip and then choose Edit=>Split Video Clip at Playhead, as shown in Figure 16-5.
- *5.* Click and drag video clips from the Clips pane to the Clip Viewer at the bottom of the screen, as shown in Figure 16-6.



If the bottom of your iMovie screen doesn't look like the examples shown here, you probably have the Timeline shown instead of the Clip Viewer. Choose View=>Switch to Clip Viewer to switch to the Clip Viewer. The Clip Viewer is the same thing as a storyboard, which is the term used by many other video editing programs.

- **6.** To change the order of clips in the Clip Viewer, simply click and drag the clips back and forth to new positions.
- **7.** To remove a clip from the movie, click and drag it back to the Clips Pane.



If you drag clips to the Trash bin located in the lower-right corner of the iMovie window, those clips are deleted from your hard drive the next time the Trash is emptied. The iMovie Trash is emptied every time you quit iMovie. If you want to use deleted clips in the future, they must be re-captured from the video tape.



Figure 16-5: Split clips for easier editing.



Figure 16-6: Click and drag clips to the Clip Viewer.

Trim Clips on the Timeline

- **1.** Open a movie project in which you've already added some clips to the Clip Viewer, as described in the preceding section.
- 2. To switch from the Clip Viewer to the Timeline, as shown in Figure 16-7, choose View[±]>Switch to Timeline Viewer or click the Timeline button below the lower-left corner of the Preview window.



The Timeline button has a clock on it.



To adjust the zoom level of the Timeline, use the Zoom slider in the lower-left corner of the iMovie screen.

- **3.** Click in the Timeline and then click Play to play the Timeline.
- **4.** When you identify a clip that you want to trim, pause playback so that the playhead is exactly on the spot to which you want to trim.



To fine-tune the playhead position, use the left and right arrow keys to move forward or back one video frame at a time. Hold down the Shift key while pressing the arrows to move in ten-frame increments.

5. Click and drag the edge of the clip until it meets the playhead, as shown in Figure 16-8. Other clips in the Timeline automatically move over to fill in the space made by a trimmed clip.



Figure 16-7: Switch iMovie to Timeline view for precision editing.



Figure 16-8: Click and drag the edge of a clip to trim it.

Add a Soundtrack

1. Open an iMovie project that's been edited, as described earlier in this chapter.



If the song you want to use for your soundtrack isn't already on your computer, use iTunes to import the song from an audio CD or the iTunes Music Store, as described in Chapter 12.

- **2.** In iMovie, click the Media button below the Clips pane on the right side of the screen.
- **3.** Click iTunes in the Media list to view your iTunes Library, as shown in Figure 16-9.



Click the arrow next to iTunes to browse specific iTunes playlists.

- **4.** Click a song to select it and then click the Play button below the Media list to preview the song.
- *5.* In the Timeline, move the playhead to the place where you want the song to begin.



Press the Home key to quickly move the playhead to the beginning of the movie.

- *6.* Click and drag a song to the Timeline to add it to your movie. The song should be dropped on one of the audio tracks below the main video track, as shown in Figure 16-10.
- **7.** Choose View=>Show Clip Volume Levels to reveal the audio volume rubber bands on the audio clips. Click and drag on points of the rubber bands, as shown in Figure 16-10, to adjust audio volume.



Figure 16-9: Browse your iTunes Library for soundtrack music.



Figure 16-10: Use the volume rubber bands to adjust volume.

160

Insert Sound Effects

- **1.** Open an iMovie project that's been edited, as described earlier in this chapter.
- **2.** In iMovie, click the Media button below the Clips pane on the right side of the screen.
- **3.** Click Standard Sound Effects or Skywalker Sound Effects in the Media list to view your iTunes Library, as shown in Figure 16-11.



You may have other available sound effects categories, such as iLife Sound Effects. Spend some time browsing your sound effects library to find out what's available.

- 4. Double-click a sound effect to hear a preview.
- *5.* In the Timeline, move the playhead to the place where you want to insert the sound effect.
- **6.** Click and drag the sound effect to the Timeline, as shown in Figure 16-12, or click Place at Playhead.
- 7. Choose View Show Clip Volume Levels to reveal the audio volume rubber bands on the audio clips. Click and drag on points of the rubber bands to adjust audio volume.



iMovie also lets you record your own narration. If your Mac doesn't have a built-in microphone, connect a microphone to the Mic port, or connect a USB mic to the USB port. Place the playhead at the place where you want to begin recording narration and then click the Record button in the lower-right corner of the Media pane. The Microphone graph lights up when you record audio. Click the Record button again to stop recording.



Figure 16-11: iMovie comes with a great selection of sound effects.



Figure 16-12: Click and drag the sound effect to the Timeline.

Apply Video Effects

- **1.** Open an iMovie project that's been edited, as described earlier in this chapter.
- **2.** In iMovie, click the Editing button below the Clips pane on the right side of the screen and then click Video FX at the top of the Editing pane to reveal a list of video effects, as shown in Figure 16-13.
- **3.** In the Timeline, click a video clip to which you want to apply a video effect.
- **4.** Click the name of a video effect to preview it, as shown in Figure 16-14.



When you preview an effect, the preview plays over and over in the Preview window. Click the Stop (X) button in the Preview window to stop the effect preview.

- **5.** Use the controls in the lower half of the Editing pane to adjust features of the effect. The exact controls available vary, depending on the selected effect.
- **6.** To apply the effect, click Apply. The application process *rendering* may take a few minutes, depending on the clip length, the effect complexity, and the computer speed.



You can apply multiple video effects to a clip. After applying one clip, select and apply another clip.

7. To remove effects from a video clip, click the clip to select it and then choose Advanced ⇒ Revert Clip to Original.



Figure 16-13: Browse video effects in the Editing pane.



Figure 16-14: Preview and adjust the effects before applying them.



Insert Transitions between Clips

- **1.** Open an iMovie project that's been edited, as described earlier in this chapter.
- **2.** In iMovie, click the Editing button below the Clips pane on the right side of the screen and then click Transitions to reveal a list of video effects, as shown in Figure 16-15.
- **3.** In the Timeline, click a video clip to which you want to apply a transition.
- 4. Click the name of a transition to preview it.
- **5.** Adjust the Speed slider to change the speed of the transition, if desired.



Some transitions are directional. Use the directional buttons next to the Speed slider to change the direction of directional transitions.

- **6.** Click and drag the transition to a spot between clips in the Timeline, as shown in Figure 16-16.
- **7.** To remove a transition, click the transition in the Timeline and press Delete.



For best results, use transitions sparingly and conservatively. Transitions should be used only between major scene changes, not between every single clip. Choose transitions that don't distract from the actual video content of your movie. Also, be aware that transitions sometimes add time to your movie, which can become troublesome if you have a carefully timed soundtrack.



Figure 16-15: Transitions are a nice addition between some clips.



Figure 16-16: Click and drag transitions to the Timeline.

Add Titles to Your Movie

- **1.** Open an iMovie project that's been edited, as described earlier in this chapter.
- **2.** In iMovie, click the Editing button below the Clips pane on the right side of the screen and then click Titles to reveal a list of title styles.
- **3.** In the Timeline, click a video clip to which you want to apply a transition. Make sure that the playhead is positioned where you want the title to first appear in the movie.
- 4. Click the name of a title style to preview it.
- *5.* In the text boxes below the title styles list, enter the text for your title, as shown in Figure 16-17.



Use the formatting menus to change the font, style, and size of the text. Sans serif fonts, such as Arial, work best in video; serif fonts, like Times New Roman, can cause flickering on some TV screens.

- **6.** To make your titles float over a video image rather than a black screen, deselect Over Black, as shown in Figure 16-18.
- **7.** Adjust the duration of the title with the Speed slider near the bottom of the Editing pane.



Some titles fade in and out. Use the Pause slider to adjust the fading speed.

8. Click the Add button to add the title to your movie.



Figure 16-17: Choose a title style and then enter some text.



Figure 16-18: Deselect the Over Black option to float your titles over video.



Export the Movie for Web Viewing

- **1.** Complete all edits for your movie, as described earlier in this chapter.
- 2. Choose Share QuickTime.
- **3.** Choose a format in the Compress Movie For menu, as shown in Figure 16-19. Notice that a file size estimate and other format details are listed for the format you choose.



Many Web users still can't or won't download large files. The smaller the file size, the more likely it is that more people will see your movie.

- **4.** If you want to fine-tune Export settings, choose Expert Settings in the Compress Movie For menu and then click Share.
- **5.** If you choose Expert Settings, choose a format in the Use menu, as shown in Figure 16-20.



If you're familiar with frame rates, video sizes, and other advanced video topics, click Options to fine-tune your Export settings. In most cases, it is safest to use just one of the preset formats provided by iMovie.

6. Provide a file name for your movie and choose a location in which to save it in the Where menu.



For online movies, don't use spaces in the file name and make sure that the $\ .\ mov$ file name extension remains intact.

7. Click Save to save your file. The export process may take a few minutes, depending on the length of your movie and complexity of your edits.



Figure 16-19: Higher quality means bigger file sizes.

000		Save exported file	as
	Save As:	Easter2001.mov	
	Where:	Movies	:
Export:	Movie to Q	uickTime Movie	Options
		- High	•

Figure 16-20: Name and save your movie.

Burn the Movie to DVD

- Complete all edits for your movie, as described earlier in this chapter, and choose File=⇒Save Project to save your movie.
- **2.** Choose Share Share DVD.



To create a movie that can play in common home DVD players, make sure you follow the steps here and don't choose File=>Burn Project to Disc. Discs created with the Burn Project to Disc feature aren't compatible with standard DVD players.

- 3. In the iDVD tab that appears, click Share.
- **4.** When iDVD launches, click a DVD theme to preview it. If you're asked whether you want to change the aspect ratio of your movie or keep it, as shown in Figure 16-21, click Keep.



Use the menu at the top of the Themes list to view additional themes. Some themes include Drop Zones where you can drop pictures or video clips. Click Menu in the lower-right corner of the iDVD screen to place photos from your iPhoto library into Drop Zones.

- *5.* Double-click a line of text in the DVD menu to change the text.
- *6.* Click the Burn button or choose File Burn DVD.
- **7.** When you're prompted to enter a recordable DVD, as shown in Figure 16-22, insert a blank disc. The encoding and recording process may take several hours.



Figure 16-21: iDVD includes some nice DVD themes.

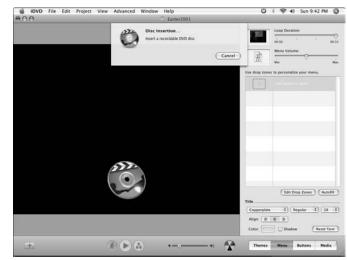
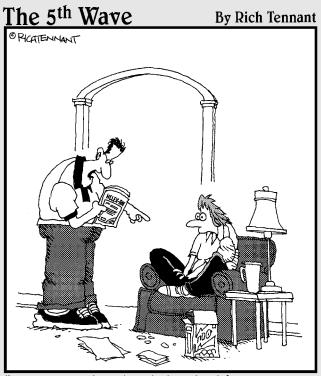


Figure 16-22: Insert a recordable DVD.

Part 5 Networking Your Mac



Okay, a patient is admitted with a comatose Blackberry, a beeping pager, and a failing iPod-what do you do?! Think! Think!"

Chapter 17: Networking Wirelessly with AirPort ... 169

Chapter 19: Connecting to Windows Networks187

Set Up Windows File Sharing	188
Change the Workgroup Name on Your Mac	189
Connect to a Windows PC from Your Mac	190
Copy Files from a Windows PC	191
Access Your Mac from a Windows PC	.192
Copy Files from a Mac	.193
Clean Up Mac Resource Forks	
on a Windows PC	194

Chapter 20: Networking Safely195

Create a New Network Location	196
Switch between Locations	197
Protect Your Mac with a Firewall	198
Encrypt Files with FileVault	199
Set up WEP Security	200
Configure WPA Encryption	202
Disable SSID Broadcast	204
Reduce Transmitter Power	204

Networking Wirelessly with AirPort

Apple's emphasis on ease-of-use, it comes as no surprise that Macs were among the first computers to take advantage of networking with no strings attached.

AirPort is Apple's name for its wireless networking products. AirPort gear is fully compatible with most other 802.11 (also sometimes called Wi-Fi) wireless networking technologies. Thus, your AirPort-equipped MacBook can access the Internet through public hotspots, and Wi-Fi-equipped Windows PCs can connect to your Apple AirPort access point.

This chapter shows you how to configure an AirPort access point to create your own wireless network. It also shows you how to connect your computers — both Windows PCs and Macs — to a wireless access point. This chapter also shows you how to create a wireless ad hoc computer-to-computer network.



The steps for connecting a computer (whether a Mac or Windows PC) to a wireless access point are the same regardless of whether the access point is an Apple AirPort unit or another type of Wi-Fi access point. See Chapter 20 for more on setting up wireless network security. For even more on wireless networking, check out Michael E. Cohen's *AirPort and Mac Wireless Networks For Dummies* (Wiley Publishing, Inc.).

Configure an AirPort Base Station

1. Connect an Ethernet cable between your broadband modem and the AirPort Base Station, if needed.



See the owner's manual that comes with your Base Station for more information on cable connections. Whatever cables you connect, the power cord should be the last cable you connect.

- **2.** Plug in the power cable for the Base Station and wait until the status light turns solid green.
- **3.** Open the Applications folder on your Mac and then open the Utilities subfolder.
- **4.** Double-click the AirPort Utility icon, as shown in Figure 17-1.
- **5.** If your AirPort Base Station appears on the left, select it and then click Continue. Otherwise, choose Set Up a New AirPort Base Station, and click Continue.
- 6. When the Base Station is detected, click Continue.



If the Base Station isn't detected, make sure that AirPort is enabled on your Mac and make sure that the status light on the Base Station is shining solid green. If the light is amber or is flashing, wait a few more seconds. If after a minute it still doesn't shine solid green, unplug the Base Station for a few seconds and then plug it back in. When the light shines solid green, click Try Again in the AirPort Setup Assistant.

7. Choose whether you want to create a new wireless network, as shown in Figure 17-2, or connect the Base Station to your existing wireless network.



Figure 17-1: Launch the AirtPort Utility from the Applications:Utilities folder.

000	AirPort Utility - KeithsOffice
e KeithsOffice	Select what you want to do with your AirPort Express. Both options allow you to share a USB printer and play iTunes music through remote speakers using AirTunes. Create a new wireless network Select this option if you are setting up a new wireless network to share a breadband internet connection with wireless computers.
	Connect to my current wireless network Select this option if you are adding this base station to your current wireless network.
	Click Continue to proceed.
	Go Back Continue

Figure 17-2: Set up a new AirPort Base Station.



8. Click Continue and then enter names for Wireless Network and the Base Station, as shown in Figure 17-3.



- If you're adding the Base Station to an existing network, the Wireless Network Name should be the same as the rest of your network. If you're creating a new network, enter a unique, personalized name for the network. Make sure that the Base Station's name is also descriptive, especially if you have more than one Base Station. This name makes it easier to identify and manage the device later.
- *9.* Click Continue and choose a security format, as shown in Figure 17-4.



WPA (Wi-Fi Protected Access) is the best type of security, but older computers and devices (such as game consoles) may support only WEP (Wired Equivalency Protocol). Use the highest level of security that's supported by the equipment you own. See Chapter 20 for more on wireless network security.

- *10.* Click Continue and choose whether the AirPort Base Station connects to a router or modem.
- **11.** Click Continue and choose how you connect to the Internet. In most cases, you want to choose the first option, which utilizes Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP).
- **12.** Enter a password for the Base Station. Keep this password safe because you'll need it to make changes to the Base Station later.
- 13. Click Continue, verify the setup details, and click Update.
- **14.** After the Base Station restarts and the Congratulations screen appears, click Quit. Setup is complete.



The steps described here are the same whether you have an AirPort Express or AirPort Extreme Base Station.

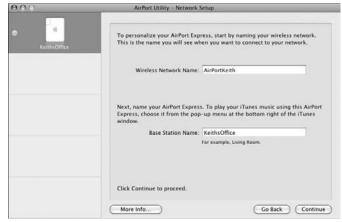


Figure 17-3: Provide descriptive names for the network and Base Station.

000	AirPort Utility - Network Setup
•	Select the level of security you want to use to protect your wireless network.
KeithsOffice	O 128-bit WEP (more compatible)
	Provides security that is more compatible with older wireless computers and devices. To make it easier for non-Macintosh computers to join your network, enter a password of exactly 13 characters.
	WPA2 Personal (more secure) Provides the maximum level of wireless security. Computers that support WPA or WPA2 will be able to join this network. You must enter a password between 8 and 63 characters.
	No security Any wireless computer can join your network without entering a password.
	Wireless Network Password:
	Verify Password:
	Remember this password in my keychain
	Click Continue to proceed.
	(More Info) (Go Back) (Continue)

Figure 17-4: Use WPA security, if possible.



Connect to a Wireless Network

- **1.** Click the AirPort icon on the menu bar and choose Turn AirPort On.
- **2.** If an open network is detected, choose whether you want to connect to it, as shown in Figure 17-5.



Don't connect to a network if you can't positively identify it. Connecting to unknown networks could expose your computer to data theft and virus infection.

3. To connect to a different network, click the AirPort icon and choose the desired network from the AirPort menu, as shown in Figure 17-6.



If the desired network isn't listed, the network might not be in range, it might be turned off, or it might be closed. See the following section for steps to access a closed network.

4. To disconnect from a wireless network, click the AirPort icon and choose Turn AirPort Off from the AirPort menu.



If your computer routinely connects to the wrong network when multiple networks are available, open System Preferences, click the Network icon, click AirPort, click Advanced, and then click Configure. In the If No Recent Networks Are Found menu, choose Ask Before Joining an Open Network. Click OK and Apply to save the change.



Figure 17-5: Choose whether you want to connect to the new network.



Figure 17-6: Choose a different network from the AirPort menu.

Access a Closed Wireless Network

1. Turn on AirPort if it isn't enabled already.



Remember, you can use the AirPort menu to quickly turn AirPort on or off.

- **2.** Click the AirPort icon in the menu bar and then choose Other from the menu that appears, as shown in Figure 17-7.
- **3.** Enter the name of the network in the Network Name field.



The network name is also sometimes called the Service Set Identifier (SSID). The network name is usually case sensitive, so make sure you enter it correctly.

- **4.** If the network uses wireless security, choose the appropriate security method in the Wireless Security menu.
- **5.** In the extra fields that appear, as shown in Figure 17-8, enter the network username, password, and other details, as appropriate.



The exact fields and menus that appear vary, depending on which security method is used. See Chapter 20 for more on working with wireless security.

6. Click OK to log on to the network.



If you can't log on to the network, double-check that you entered the network name, your username, and any passwords or network keys with the correct case. Network names, passwords, and keys are often case-sensitive.



Figure 17-7: Choose AirPort=>Other to access a closed network.

Joir	n AirPort Network	
Enter the name of enter the passwo	ne of the network. of the network you want to join, and then ord if necessary. You can also click Show a list of available networks.	
Network Name:	WebsterNet	
Security:	WPA2 Personal \$	
Password:		
	Remember this network	
?	Cancel Join	\supset

Figure 17-8: Enter the network name and login details here.



Create an Ad Hoc Network between Two Computers

- 1. Click the AirPort icon on the menu bar and choose Create Network from the menu that appears.
- **2.** In the Computer-to-Computer window that appears, type a name for your ad hoc network, as shown in Figure 17-9.
- **3.** Choose a channel to use for the ad hoc network in the Channel menu.



Try to choose a channel that's different from that used by other wireless networks in the area. If you aren't sure, just choose Automatic.

- **4.** Click OK to create the network.
- **5.** On the other computer, click the AirPort icon and choose the desired computer-to-computer network, as shown in Figure 17-10.
- *6.* To access the other computer, open a Finder window, click Network in the sidebar, and then open My Network.
- 7. Double-click the name of a computer that you want to access, click Connect, and log in to the remote computer.
- **8.** When you're done using the computer-to-computer network, click the AirPort icon and choose Disconnect from Current Network.



To quickly rejoin your primary wireless network, turn off AirPort via the AirPort menu, wait a few seconds, and then turn on AirPort again. AirPort logs on to your default preferred network, if it's available.

		Computer-to-Computer
		a Computer-to-Computer network. e name of the Computer-to-Computer network you create.
	Name:	Keith Underdahl's Mac mini
(Channel:	Default (11)
		Require Password The password must be entered as exactly 13 ASCII characters or 26 hex digits.
Pa	assword:	
	Security:	128-bit WEP
?		Cancel OK

Figure 17-9: Name your ad hoc network.



Figure 17-10: Select an ad hoc network to join.

Access an AirPort Base Station from Windows

- 1. In Windows, choose Start All Programs Accessories Communications Network Connections.
- **2.** In the Network Connections window, double-click the Wireless Network Connection.
- **3.** In the Wireless Network Connection window, click Set Up a Wireless Network for a Home or Small Office under Network Tasks in the sidebar.
- **4.** In the Wireless Network Setup Wizard that appears, click Next, choose Set Up a New Wireless Network (if you see that option), and click Next again.
- **5.** Enter the network name, as shown in Figure 17-11, and choose the type of security used on your network.
- 6. Select Manually Assign a Network Key and click Next.
- 7. Enter the network key (the password) and click Next.
- **8.** Choose Set Up a Network Manually in the next screen and then click Next again.
- *9.* Click Finish to complete the setup process and then make sure that your AirPort network appears in the wireless network list, as shown in Figure 17-12.



To disconnect a Windows PC from your wireless network, doubleclick the wireless network icon in the Windows system tray (the area in the lower-right corner next to the clock) and then click Disable in the dialog that appears.

reless Network Setup Wizard 🛛 😤 🖄 Create a name for your wireless network.		
Give your network a name, u	sing up to 32 characters.	
Network name (SSID):	AirPortKeith	
O Automatically assign a net	work key (recommended)	
	accessing your network, Windows will automatically assign a WEP or WPA key) to your network.	
Manually assign a network	key	
Use this option if you wou existing wireless networki	ld prefer to create your own key, or add a new device to your ng using an old key.	
Use WPA encryption inste- compatible with WPA)	ad of WEP (WPA is stronger than WEP but not all devices are	
	< Back Next > Cancel	

Figure 17-11: Enter your network name and choose the security level.

Network Tasks	Choose a wireless network	
💋 Refresh network list	Click an item in the list below to connect to a wireless information.	network in range or to get more
Set up a wireless network for a home or small office	((O)) AirPortKeith	Connected 🔮
Related Tasks	This network requires a network key. Yo network, To disconnect from this netwo	
Learn about wireless networking		
Change the order of preferred networks		
Generation Change advanced settings		

Figure 17-12: Check the wireless network connection here.

Troubleshoot a Wireless Connection

- 1. Double-check that the AirPort adapter is turned on.
- **2.** Check the signal strength by looking at the AirPort icon on the Menu bar. Four bars indicate a strong signal; fewer bars mean the signal is weak.
- **3.** Check to see if the network is closed. See the section, "Access a Closed Wireless Network," earlier in this chapter for steps.
- **4.** Connect an Ethernet cable between the AirPort access point on your computer and then follow the steps I describe in the section, "Configure an AirPort Base Station," to make sure that the access point is configured properly.
- **5.** Make sure that your computer is configured to work with DHCP, as I describe in Chapter 18.
- 6. Check that your DSL or cable modem is connected properly to the WAN (Wide Area Network) or modem port on your AirPort access point, as I describe in Chapter 18.



You might need to connect the modem to your computer to check its status.

- **7.** If you're trying to network wirelessly with a Windows PC, check that your Mac's workgroup name is properly set, as I describe in Chapter 19.
- **8.** Look for devices that may cause Wi-Fi signal interference, such as microwave ovens or 2.4GHz cordless telephones.
- *9.* If Wi-Fi interference can't be eliminated, click the AirPort icon and choose Open Network Preferences. Select AirPort, click Advanced, click AirPort, and then choose Enable Interference Robustness (see Figure 17-13).



Figure 17-13: Interference Robustness can help you work around Wi-Fi interference.



Rearrange your hardware so that these items aren't physically close to your AirPort access point or your computer.



Sharing Resources

The number one reason to set up a network is to share stuff among your various computers. This "stuff" usually includes files, Internet connections, and printers. Sharing these resources is pretty easy, as is accessing shared resources on other network computers.

Before you can share anything, your Mac must be properly connected to the network. Chapter 17 shows you how to connect your Mac to a wireless network, and this chapter shows you how to connect to a wired Ethernet network. Ethernet networks aren't quite as convenient as wireless networks, but they offer greater reliability, security, and speed. All modern Macs include adapters for connecting to Ethernet networks.

After you're connected to a network, this chapter shows you how to share printers, files, and Internet connections with the network. Steps also show you how to access shared resources on other networked computers. This chapter shows you how to network mainly with other Macintosh computers, although many of the principles apply to Microsoft Windows computers as well. See Chapter 19 for more on networking with Windows PCs.



Sharing Internet connections, as I describe in this chapter, is usually necessary only if you have dialup Internet access. For example, if you access a dialup Internet service with the modem in your Mac, you can share that connection with the rest of your network if you wish. If you connect to the Internet with a cable modem or digital subscriber line (DSL), the external modem for that service should be connected to the WAN (Wide Area Network) port on your network's router.

Chapter 18

Get ready to . . .

→ Connect to an Ethernet Network	178
➡ Set an IP Address Manually	179
➡ Find the IP Address of a Mac	180
➡ Find the IP Address of a Windows PC	180
➡ Share an Internet Connection	181
➡ Share a Printer	182
Access a Shared Printer	183
🖚 Enable File Sharing	184
Holders	185

Connect to an Ethernet Network

1. Connect an Ethernet cable between the Ethernet port on your Mac and a local area network (LAN) port on your Ethernet switch, hub, or router.



If you need to buy new networking hardware, a router is the easiest to configure and provides the greatest flexibility.

- **2.** Restart your Mac and then open System Preferences from the Apple menu.
- 3. In System Preferences, click the Network icon.
- **4.** Select Built-in Ethernet, as shown in Figure 18-1, and then click Advanced.
- **5.** On the TCP/IP screen, as shown in Figure 18-2, choose Using DHCP in the Configure IPv4 menu.
- **6.** If a numeric IP address isn't listed next to IP Address (as shown in Figure 18-2), click Renew DHCP Lease.
- 7. Click OK and then Apply to apply your changes.



To connect two computers together directly without using a hub or router, use a special Ethernet cable — a *crossover* cable. Crossover cables are available at most computer retailers. Keep crossover cables clearly marked because they don't work for connecting a computer to a hub or router. Many newer Macs can connect directly to each other with a regular network cable; check your Mac's documentation to see if it has self-configuring ports.



If you want to access an Internet connection that's shared by another computer (see the section, "Share an Internet Connection," later in this chapter), follow the steps here to configure your network connection. The Internet sharing server behaves like a Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server.

	Location: Automatic	\$
Bluetooth • Not Connected	Status:	Built-in Ethernet is connected
Suilt-in Ethernet Connected		Built-in Ethernet is currently active and has the IP address 192.168.0.105.
Built-in FireWire	Configure:	Off
AirPort • Not Connected		
	DNS Server:	192.168.0.10
	Search Domains:	domain.actdsltmp
		(Advanced)

Figure 18-1: Choose Built-in Ethernet and click Advanced.

000 E	Built-in Ethernet			
	TCP/IP D	NS WINS Apple	Talk 802.1X Pro	oxies Ethernet
	Configure IPv4:	Using DHCP	\$	
	IPv4 Address:	192.168.0.105		Renew DHCP Lease
		255.255.255.0 192.168.0.10	DHCP Client ID:	(If required)
	Configure IPv6:	Automatically	\$	
	Router: IPv6 Address:			
	Prefix Length:			
7)				Cancel OK

Figure 18-2: Use DHCP when connecting to an Ethernet network.

Set an 1P Address Manually

- **1.** Open System Preferences from the Apple menu and then click the Network icon.
- **2.** Select Built-in Ethernet and click Advanced.
- **3.** On the TCP/IP screen, choose Manually in the Configure IPv4 menu, as shown in Figure 18-3.



If your network uses a router or other DHCP server, but you still need to assign an Internet Protocol (IP) address manually, choose Using DHCP with Manual Address in the Configure IPv4 menu instead.

4. Type an IP address for your computer in the IPv4 Address field, as shown in Figure 18-4.



On a typical home network, the IP address starts with 192.168.0. The final segment can be any number between 0 and 255. Each computer on the network must have a unique IP address. Check the documentation for your router or server software to see if the IP address should be in a specific range.

- **5.** Enter a Subnet Mask, which in almost all cases is 255.255.255.0.
- **6.** Enter the IP address for the router or server computer on the network. If you don't have a router, enter the IP address for the computer that connects to the Internet.
- 7. Click Apply Now and then close System Preferences.



These steps can also apply to AirPort connections and other types of network connections, although usually those connections are configured automatically.

Built-in Ethernet	NS WINS AppleTalk 802.1X	Proxies Ethernet
Configure IPv4 🗸	Manually Using DHCP with manual address]
IPv4 Address	Using DHCP	
Subnet Mask	Using BootP Using PPP	
Router	Off	
Configure IPv6:	Automatically)
Router:		
IPv6 Address:		
Prefix Length:		
		Cancel OK

Figure 18-3: You can set your IP address automatically.

Been Bi	uilt-in Ethernet			
	TCP/IP D	NS WINS AppleTalk	802.1X Proxie	s Ethernet
	Configure IPv4:	Manually	\$	
	IPv4 Address:	192.168.0.104		
	Subnet Mask:	255.255.255.0		
	Router:	192.168.0.10		
	Configure IPv6:	Automatically	\$	
	Router:			
	IPv6 Address:			
	Prefix Length:			
?				Cancel OK

Figure 18-4: Enter the network addresses manually.

Find the 1P Address of a Mac

- 1. Open System Preferences from the Apple menu.
- 2. Click the Network icon.
- **3.** Note the address listed in the IP Address field, as shown in Figure 18-5.



The Network screen shows the IP address for whichever network connection is currently active, be it the built-in Ethernet, AirPort, or another connection.

Find the 1P Address of a Windows PC

- 1. On the Windows PC, choose Start My Network Places.
- **2.** In the My Network Places window, click View Network Connections under Network Tasks.
- **3.** Click the network connection to select it and then note the IP address listed under Details in the lower-left corner of the screen, as shown in Figure 18-6.



180

If the computer has multiple network connections (such as Ethernet and 802.11 Wi-Fi), make sure you choose the connection that's currently active.

900	Network		
Show All		Q	
	Location: Automatic	•	
Bluetooth • Not Connected	Status:	Built-in Ethernet is conn	
<> Built-in Ethernet = Connected		Built-in Ethernet is currently at the IP address 192.168.0.105.	tive and has
Built-in FireWire	Configure:	Using DHCP	\$
AirPort	IP Address:	192.168.0.105	
	Subnet Mask:	255.255.255.0	
	Router:	192.168.0.10	
	DNS Server:	192.168.0.10	
	Search Domains:	domain.actdsltmp	
+ - 0-	_	A	dvanced) (?)
n	vent further changes.		
Click the lock to pre	event further changes.	(Assist me) (Reve	ert Apply

Figure 18-5: This computer's IP address is 192.168.0.102.

ile Edit View Fa	avorites	Tools Advanced Help		11
🕃 Back 🔹 🕥 - 👩	0	Search 😥 Folders		
ddress 🔍 Network Connec	tions		~	⇒ Go
		Name	Туре	Status
Network Tasks	8	LAN or High-Speed Internet		
Other Places	۲	Local Area Connection	LAN or High-Speed Inter	Connecte
Details	۲			
Local Area Connection LAN or High-Speed Intern				
Connected, Firewalled				
DAVICOM 9102-Based PC Ethernet Adapter	I Fast			
IP Address: 192.168.0.10 Subnet Mask: 255.255.25 Assigned by DHCP				
		(3

Figure 18-6: This computer's IP address is 192.168.0.106.

Share an Internet Connection

- **1.** Open System Preferences from the Apple menu and then click the Sharing icon under Internet & Network.
- **2.** In the Sharing window (shown in Figure 18-7), click Internet Sharing to open Internet sharing preferences.
- **3.** In the Share Your Connection From menu, choose the network connection that connects to the Internet. If the computer connects via dialup, choose Internal Modem. If you connect to the Internet with a DSL or cable modem, choose the connection to which the modem is attached. In most cases, this is the Built-in Ethernet connection.
- **4.** Under To Computers Using, place a check mark next to the connection that will be used to share the Internet connection with other computers. This should be a different connection than the one selected in the Share Your Connection From menu.



Make a note of the warning message that appears when you choose a share-to connection and make sure that sharing your connection doesn't violate the service agreement with your Internet service provider (ISP).

- **5.** If you're sharing the connection using AirPort, click AirPort Options. Select Enable Encryption, choose 128bit in the WEP Key Length menu, and enter a Wired Equivalency Protocol (WEP) password, as shown in Figure 18-8. Click OK to close AirPort options.
- *6.* Place a check mark next to Internet Sharing to begin sharing your Internet connection.



The WEP password must be entered on all sharing client computers.

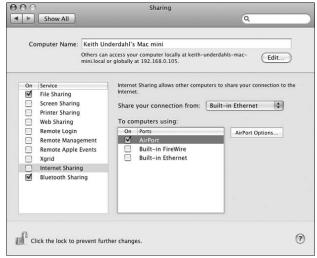


Figure 18-7: Choose the connections to use for Internet connection sharing.

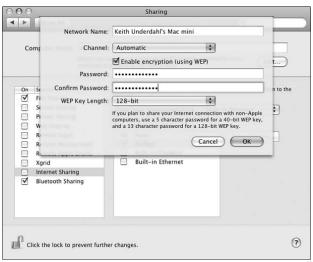


Figure 18-8: Make sure you secure Internet sharing over AirPort.

Share a Printer

- **1.** Open System Preferences from the Apple menu and then click the Print & Fax icon.
- 2. Click the printer that you want to share to select it.
- **3.** Place a check mark next to Share This Printer, as shown in Figure 18-9.
- **4.** Click Options & Supplies and a descriptive name in the Printer Name field. Make sure that the Location field is descriptive and accurate, and click OK.



The printer name and location appears on other network computers when the printer is shared, so make sure that the information adequately distinguishes the printer from other devices on the network.

- 5. Click Show All to return to System Preferences.
- 6. Click the Sharing icon to open Sharing options.
- **7.** Make sure that Printer Sharing is checked, as shown in Figure 18-10.
- 8. Close System Preferences.



182

Remember, a shared printer can be accessed only when the computer to which it's connected is powered on and connected to the network. The printer must also be turned on and connected to the computer.

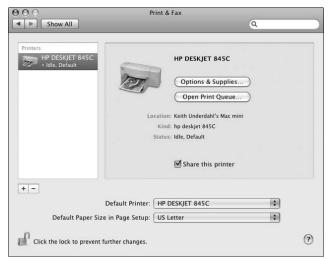


Figure 18-9: Select the printer that you want to share.

0	Sharing
Show All	٩
Computer Name:	eith Underdahl's Mac mini
	hers can access your computer locally at keith-underdahls-mac- ni.local or globally at 192.168.0.105.
On Service	Printer Sharing allows other people to use printers connected to this
File Sharing	computer.
Screen Sharing	
Printer Sharing	
Web Sharing	
Remote Login	
Remote Managen	nent
Remote Apple Ev	ents
Xgrid	
Internet Sharing	
Bluetooth Sharing	
Click the lock to prov	ent further changes.

Figure 18-10: Make sure that Printer Sharing is enabled.

Access a Shared Printer

- **1.** Open System Preferences from the Apple menu and then click the Print & Fax icon.
- **2.** Click the Add Printer button. It looks like a plus sign and is located under the list of printers.
- **3.** In the Printer Browser that appears, as shown in Figure 18-11, choose
 - **Default:** Choose this if the printer is connected to a Macintosh running OS X. Select the shared printer and click Add.
 - Windows: Choose this if the printer is connected to a Windows PC, as shown in Figure 18-11. Click the workgroup name, the computer name, and enter a valid user name and password for the computer. Then click the name of the printer you want to access. Choose the correct model in the Printer Using menu.
 - **Bluetooth:** If the printer is a wireless Bluetooth printer, choose this option.
 - AppleTalk: Choose this if the printer is connected to an older Mac running a Classic operating system.
- 4. Click Add and then close System Preferences.
- **5.** Open a document that you want to print and choose File⇔Print.
- **6.** In the Printer menu, choose the shared printer to which you want to print, as shown in Figure 18-12, review other printing options, and then click Print.

orkgroup eelance	4	solo bi	A (Printer2 HP Deskjet 845c
Name:	HP Des	kjet 845c		
	Select a driver to use			
	Q		_	
		,,		
		Jet 842C - Gutenprint v5		
		Jet 843C – Gutenprint v5 Jet 845C – Gutenprint v5		
		Jet 850C – Gutenprint v5		
		Jet 855C – Gutenprint v5		

Figure 18-11: Choose the workgroup to which the Windows printer is connected.

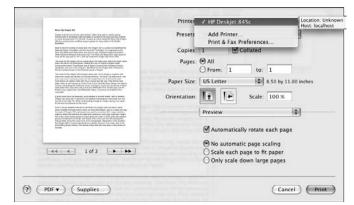


Figure 18-12: Select the printer to which you want to print.

Enable File Sharing

- **1.** Open System Preferences from the Apple menu and then click the Sharing icon.
- **2.** In the Sharing window, place a check mark next to File Sharing, as shown in Figure 18-13.



Open Sharing preferences and disable File Sharing whenever you access a public Wi-Fi hotspot or other network that isn't secure. This prevents unauthorized users from accessing your files.

- **3.** Click Users next to View By to open the list of users who are authorized to access your computer over the network.
- **4.** Click the Add button under Users (it looks like a plus sign) to add a new authorized user.
- **5.** Select Sharing Users, Network Users, or Address Book to see a list of users. If you don't see the person you want to add, click New Person and enter a username and password in the window that appears.
- **6.** Select the user, as shown in Figure 18-14, and click Select. The user now appears in the list of authorized users in the Sharing window.



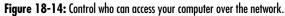
184

If the network user will access your computer from a Windows PC, see Chapter 19 for more on activating Windows File Sharing.



Figure 18-13: Enable File Sharing to allow others to share your files.





Share Files and Folders

- **1.** Open System Preferences from the Apple menu and then click the Sharing icon.
- **2.** Select File Sharing and then choose Folders next to View By.
- **3.** Under Shared Folders, select a folder for which you want to control sharing. If the folder you want to share isn't in the list, click the Add button (it looks like a plus sign) under Shared Folders and browse to the folder that you want to share.
- **4.** Under Users, select a user, and then choose a level of access for the user, as shown in Figure 18-15.
- **5.** Close System Preferences when you're done sharing folders and managing access.
- 6. Copy files into your shared folders to share those files.



Items in your Public folder can be viewed or copied by anyone, so be careful what you put in that folder. Also, don't share other folders on your computer unless you know for sure that the folder's contents are safe for public consumption.

- **7.** Open a Finder window. Under Shared in the sidebar, click the name of a network computer containing shared items.
- **8.** Click Connect As and then enter a valid username and password for the computer.
- *9.* Use the Finder window to browse the computer, as shown in Figure 18-16.



Choose Guest to log in to the computer as a guest and access public items.

Computer Name: Keith		Keith Un	derdahl's Mac mini		
			access your computer lo or globally at 192.168.0.	cally at keith-underdahls- 105.	mac- Edit
Scre	ice Sharing en Sharing ter Sharing		for "Keith Underdahl		192.168.0.105/ or browse Jsers
Web	Sharing note Login note Manag		Shared Folders:	Users:	No Access Read & Write
Xgri	iote Apple d rnet Sharin tooth Shari	g	in screens in Public	n Everyone	✓ Read Only Write Only (Drop Bo
			+ -	+ -	Advanced

Figure 18-15: Control access rights for shared folders.

Image: Solution of the soluti	000	(A)	keithunderdahl		C
Image: Disk Image: Disk	•		• * •	(۹
Downloads	Construction of the second se	Connected as: Keith Underd Connect As	 Documents Library Movies Music Opera 7 Preference Pictures Public Send Registration Sites 	F F S.new F	

Figure 18-16: Access shared folders using the Finder.



Connecting to Windows Networks

t's no secret that most PCs in the world run Windows. You may even have some Windows PCs of your own. If so, there's no reason why your Macs and PCs can't live together. Setting up a network between Windows PCs and Macs takes only minutes; and after configured, you can easily share files, printers, Internet connections, and other resources between the two.

This chapter shows you how to network between Macs and Windows PCs with network hardware that's already in place. The steps here assume that you have

- ➡ Mac OS 10.2 or later. Computers running earlier versions of the Mac OS can connect to Windows networks, but third-party software is necessary. The steps here are based on OS 10.5 or later, but the procedures for OS 10.2, 10.3, and 10.4 are similar. For information on networking between newer and older Macs, see Chapter 22.
- Windows XP or better. If you have an older version of Windows, you can follow the steps in this chapter to some extent, although some procedures might vary slightly. Windows XP or later provides easier, more secure networking.
- An Ethernet router or wireless network. For more on setting up Macintosh networking hardware and software, see Chapters 17 and 18. If you need to set up a Windows network, check out my book, *Wi-Fi Home Networking Just the Steps For Dummies* (Wiley Publishing, Inc.).

- Change the Workgroup Name on Your Mac189
 Connect to a Windows PC
- from Your Mac190
- → Copy Files from a Windows PC......191
- Access Your Mac from a Windows PC192
- → Copy Files from a Mac......193

Set Up Windows File Sharing

- **1.** On your Mac, open System Preferences from the Apple menu and then click Sharing.
- **2.** Type a descriptive name in the Computer Name field, as shown in Figure 19-1. This is the name that other computers see on the network.
- **3.** Select the File Sharing check box, as shown in Figure 19-1.



File Sharing must be enabled, whether you want to share files with Windows PCs or other Macs.

- 4. Click Advanced.
- *5.* Place a check mark next to Share Files and Folders using SMB.
- *6.* Place a check mark next to accounts that may access the computer from a Windows PC, as shown in Figure 19-2.



Only enable accounts that need file access from a Windows PC. Needlessly enabling file sharing for other accounts could compromise the security of your computer.

7. Click Done and then close System Preferences.



If you no longer need to share files with Windows PCs, open the Sharing preferences window and disable Windows Sharing.

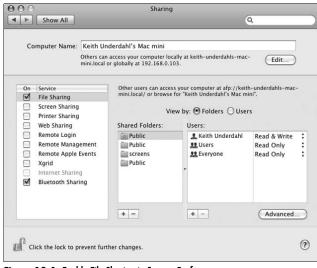


Figure 19-1: Enable File Sharing in System Preferences.

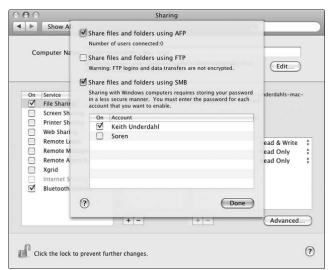


Figure 19-2: Control which accounts can access the computer from Windows.

Change the Workgroup Name on Your Mac

- 1. Open System Preferences from the Apple menu.
- 2. Click the Network icon to open Network settings.
- **3.** Select the network connection you use to connect to the Windows network, as shown in Figure 19-3.
- 4. Click Advanced.
- 5. Click WINS.
- **6.** Type the name of your Windows workgroup in the Workgroup field, as shown in Figure 19-4.
- 7. Click OK and then click Apply to apply your changes.



If you have OS 10.2 through 10.4, setting the Windows Workgroup name is a little more complicated. Launch the Directory Access utility from your Applications:Utilities folder. Unlock the Directory Access Utility using your Administrator password and then place a check mark next to SMB/CIFS. Click Configure next to SMB/CIFS and enter the Windows Workgroup name in the Workgroup field. Click OK and then quit the Directory Access utility.



To determine a Windows workgroup name, open the Control Panel on a Windows PC and then double-click the System icon. The Computer Name tab of the System Properties dialog box lists the workgroup name. The workgroup name should be the same on each computer on the network.

00	Network	
Show All		٩
Lo	cation: Automatic	\$
Bluetooth • Not Connected Built-in Ethernet • Not Connected	Status: AirPort is con AirPort is connec the IP address 19	ted to AirPortKeith and has
Built-in FireWire	Power: On	Turn AirPort Off
AirPort Connected	Network Name: AirPortKeith AirPort ID: 00:17:f2:45:57 IP Address: 192.168.0.103	
+ - 0.	Show AirPort status in menu bar	(Advanced) (?

Figure 19-3: Select the network connection you use to connect to your Windows network.

0	N	letwork
AirPort		
	TCP/IP DNS WINS Appl	leTalk 802.1X Proxies AirPort
	NetBIOS Name: MACOO	16CBA61DD3 MAC0016CBA61DD3 is
	Workgroup: workgr	oup currently being used.
	WINS Servers:	
	+ -	
0		(Cancel) OK
Click the l	ock to prevent further changes.	Assist me Revert Appl

Figure 19-4: Enter the Windows workgroup name.

Connect to a Windows PC from Your Mac

1. Open a Finder window and click Network in the upper-left corner of the window at the top of the Finder sidebar.



Before you can connect to a Windows PC, both the Windows PC and your Mac should be powered on and connected to the network. File sharing must be enabled on the Windows PC (see *Wi-Fi Home Networking Just the Steps For Dummies* [Wiley Publishing, Inc.] by me for more on enabling Windows file sharing), and you should set the workgroup name on your Mac, as I describe earlier in this chapter.

- **2.** Click the name of the computer to which you want to connect, as shown in Figure 19-5.
- 3. Click Connect As.
- **4.** Enter an account name and password, as shown in Figure 19-6. The account name and password should be valid on the computer to which you want to connect.



If you enter an invalid account name or no name at all, you can still connect as a Guest to the Shared Items folder on the Windows PC as well as other shared resources on that computer.

5. Click Connect.

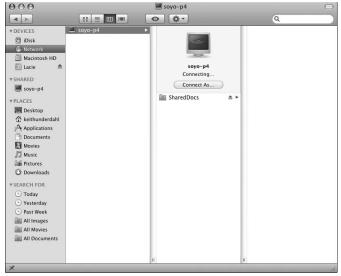


Figure 19-5: Use the Finder to find a Windows PC on your network.



Figure 19-6: Enter an account name and password.

Copy Files from a Windows PC

- **1.** Connect to a Windows PC, as I describe in the previous section.
- **2.** Use the Finder to locate files on the Windows PC, as shown in Figure 19-7.
- **3.** To quickly copy a file from the Windows PC to the Documents folder on your Mac, simply click and drag the file to the Documents icon in the Finder sidebar, as shown in Figure 19-8.



You can also click and drag items from the Windows PC to your OS X desktop, or you can open a second Finder window and drag files to specific subfolders on your Mac.

4. To copy files from your Mac to the Windows PC, click and drag files and folders to the Windows folder in a Finder window.



You can't copy files to a Windows folder that shows a small lock icon on the folder image. You can only copy into folders for which you have write access.



When you access a Windows hard drive from a Mac, the Mac OS leaves system file fragments called *resource forks* on the Windows hard drive. These files are unnecessary for the Windows operating system and can be deleted safely after the Mac has disconnected from the Windows PC. See the section on cleaning up resource forks later in this chapter for steps to get rid of resource forks.

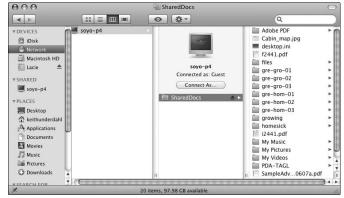


Figure 19-7: Windows folders can be accessed through the OS X Finder.

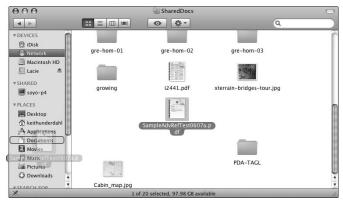


Figure 19-8: Click and drag files to copy them.



Access Your Mac from a Windows PC

1. On your Windows PC, choose Start My Network Places.



You can also access My Network Places in My Computer or Windows Explorer.

- **2.** Under Network Tasks on the left side of the window, click View Network Computers.
- **3.** Select the Mac to which you want to connect from the list of computers, as shown in Figure 19-9.



If your Mac doesn't appear in the list, make sure that the Mac's workgroup name has been properly set (as I describe earlier in this computer) and double-check that the Mac is powered-on and connected to the network.

- **4.** Double-click the icon for the Mac to which you want to connect.
- **5.** In the login box that appears, as shown in Figure 19-10, enter a username and password that are valid on the Mac and then click OK.



In order to log in to a Mac from Windows, you must use a username and password that's valid on that Mac. The account must be authorized to log in remotely, and Windows File Sharing must be enabled on the Mac.

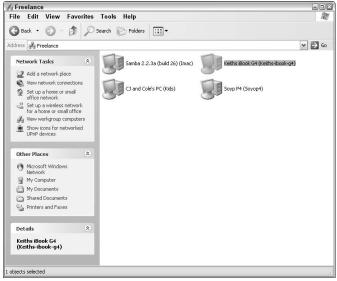


Figure 19-9: Use My Network Places to browse computers on your network.



Figure 19-10: Log in to the Mac with a valid username and password.

Copy Files from a Mac

- **1.** Log in to the Mac from Windows, as I describe in the previous section.
- **2.** Double-click the folder icon for the user account you used to log in to the Mac, as shown in Figure 19-11.
- 3. Browse to the files that you want to copy.



Remember, you can only access files owned by the user account that you used to log in to the Mac. Files owned by other user accounts aren't accessible.

- **4.** Select the files you want to copy, as shown in Figure 19-12.
- **5.** Open My Computer or Windows Explorer and then open the folder to which you want to copy the files. Arrange the windows so that both the Mac folder and the target folder are visible.
- **6.** Click and drag files from the Mac to the folder on your Windows PC, as shown in Figure 19-12.
- **7.** Repeat this procedure in reverse to copy files from your Windows PC to your Mac.



You can also copy or move files in Windows by using the Ctrl+C (Copy), Ctrl+X (Cut), and Ctrl+V (Paste) commands.

Keiths iBook G4 (Keiths-iboo			500
File Edit View Favorites	Tools Help		Re.
3 Back + 🕥 - 🇊 🔎	Search Def Folders		
ddress 🔋 \\Keiths-ibook-g4			💌 🔁 GO
Network Tasks Image: Comparison of the sector	Name A Desket Rethunderdah P5-5911A9-U1 Printers and Paxes	Comments HP DeskJet 845C - Gmp-Print vS User Home Drectories HP DeskJet 845C - Gmp-Print vS Shows installed printers and Fax	
Other Places Relance My Computer My Documents Shared Documents Shared Documents Pinters and Paxes			
Details 🛛 🕹			
biects selected			

Figure 19-11: Double-click the folder icon to access files.

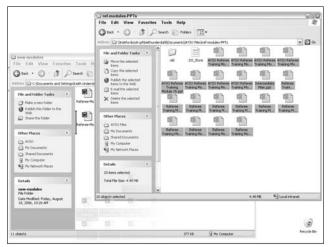


Figure 19-12: Copying files between Windows XP and OS X is easy!

Clean Up Mac Resource Forks on a Windows PC

- **1.** On your Windows PC, use Windows Explorer or My Computer to open a folder that you know has been accessed by a Mac.
- **2.** In the My Computer or Windows Explorer window, choose Tools+>Folder Options.
- **3.** Click the View tab to bring it to the front, as shown in Figure 19-13.
- **4.** Under Hidden Files and Folders, select Show Hidden Files and Folders, as shown in Figure 19-13.
- 5. Click OK to close the Folder Options window.
- 6. Identify and select files that have ghost-like icons, as shown in Figure 19-14. These files will have a file name that's similar to another non-ghosted file in the same folder. If you see a file named .DS_Store, select it as well.
- 7. Delete the selected files.



If you aren't absolutely sure about a file's purpose, don't delete it. Except for the file .DS_Store, Mac resource fork files almost always share a file name with another, valid file.

	าร	6
neral View	File Types Offline Files	
- Folder view	18	
-	You can apply the view (such as Details or Tiles)	that
PEE	you are using for this folder to all folders.	
	Apply to All Folders Reset All Folders	
		_
Advanced se		_
🗎 Hid	iden files and folders	^
0	Do not show hidden files and folders	
_ ~	Show hidden files and folders	
	e extensions for known file types	
	le protected operating system files (Recommended)	_
	inch folder windows in a separate process	
	member each folder's view settings	
	store previous folder windows at logon	10
	ow Control Panel in My Computer	
V She	ow encrypted or compressed NTFS files in color	
	ow pop-up description for folder and desktop items	
🗹 She	e simple file sharing (Recommended)	

Figure 19-13: Force Windows to show hidden files.

_> files File Edit View Favorites 1	Tools Help				
O set - O - 3 250	100 million •				
Address Clipcounents and Settings (Al					v 🗊 🖉
Folders X	Name -	Size Type	Date Modified		
Jesting J		410 PKG Image 410 PKG Image 740 DISJITOLE PKG 12440 PKG Image 11440 PKG Image	7/11/2007 / Direks (Heri 7/11/2007 / Direks (Heri		
objects selected				14.0KB	Wy Computer

Figure 19-14: Mac resource forks aren't needed by Windows.

Networking Safely

Connecting your computer to a network brings added convenience to your electronic life. Networks let you share files and printers, and connect easily to the Internet. The Internet is the world's largest network, so every time you connect to it you're networking.

But with the added convenience of networking comes some danger as well. With networks, unsavory persons can steal your identity, violate your privacy, access your sensitive files, and infect your computer with viruses. You can avoid these dangers by taking some simple precautions, and this chapter shows you how. This chapter shows you how to

- Create and use network locations. Network locations allow you to quickly switch to a higher level of security when needed, such as when you connect to a public Wi-Fi hotspot.
- Guard against intrusion with a firewall. Firewalls block unwanted network and Internet intrusion into your computer.
- Keep unauthorized users off your wireless network. By changing and hiding your SSID (Service Set Identifier), setting up WEP (good) or WPA (better) encryption, and fine-tuning your wireless transmitter power you can prevent neighbors and passers-by from accessing your network and using your Internet connection.
- Encrypt files. OS X includes tools to help you encrypt your most sensitive files for added protection.

Chapter 20

Get ready to . . .

Create a New Network Location

- **1.** Open System Preferences from the Apple menu and then click the Network icon.
- 2. In the Location menu, choose Edit Locations.
- **3.** In the Edit Locations sheet that appears, click the Add Location button (it looks like a plus sign), type a descriptive name for the location, as shown in Figure 20-1, and click Done.
- **4.** Make sure that your new location is selected in the Location menu, click the network connection that you'll use at this location (AirPort, Built-In Ethernet, Built-In FireWire, Bluetooth, or Internal Modem) to select it, and then click Advanced.
- **5.** Adjust network settings as needed for the connection. If you're configuring an AirPort location, click the AirPort button to bring AirPort options to the front.
- *6.* In the If No Recent Networks Are Found menu, choose one of the following:
 - * Ask before joining an open network. If you choose this option, AirPort asks you before connecting to an unrecognized open network.
 - * Keep looking for recent networks. This option prevents AirPort from even trying to connect to new, open networks.
- **7.** Place a check mark next to Control Over AirPort Interface Requires Administrator Password, as shown in Figure 20-2.

00	Network	
Show All Show All C Built-in Ethernet Not Connected Built-in FireWire Not Connected AirPort Connected Connected	Locations hotspot Automatic + - \$- Cancel Done	Connected
 Connected + - &- 	Account Name: Password: Connect Show modem status in menu bar	(Advanced)

Figure 20-1: Provide a descriptive name for the location.

00	Network	
AirPort		
	TCP/IP DNS WINS AppleTalk 802	.1X Proxies AirPort
If no recei	nt networks are found:	
Ask be	fore joining an open network	
Discon	ber any network this computer has joined nect from wireless networks when logging of Interference Robustness over AirPort interface requires Administrato	
0.0	estore Defaults)	
?	Share Author shares in a	Cancel OK
Click the lo	ock to prevent further changes.	sist me) (Revert) (Apply

Figure 20-2: Make AirPort more restrictive in less secure environments.

8. Select the Disconnect from Wireless Networks When Logging Out check box and then click OK to close the AirPort options tab.



If you experience very poor connection quality, look to see if a microwave oven or 2.4GHz cordless phone is near your computer or the wireless access point. These items can interfere with Wi-Fi signals. If you can't separate the items sufficiently, place a check mark next to Enable Interference Robustness. This might slightly reduce Wi-Fi signal interference.

- *9.* If the location has a wireless network that requires a specific login name and password, click 802.1X.
- *10.* Enter the User Name and Password; also enter the network's name in the Wireless Network field, as shown in Figure 20-3. The network name is the network's SSID.
- 11. Click OK to close the tab.
- *12.* Click Apply to apply your changes and create the new location.

Switch between Locations

- **1.** Open System Preferences from the Apple menu and then click the Network icon.
- **2.** In the Location menu, choose the desired location, as shown in Figure 20-4.
- **3.** Click Apply to begin using the new location settings and then close System Preferences.



To ensure your security, switch to your more secure location settings before joining a hotspot or other non-secure network.

0	Network	
AirPort		
TCP/IP	DNS WINS AppleTalk 8	02.1X Proxies AirPort
Domain: User	•	
Configurations	User Name:	KeithUnderdahl
	Password:	
	Wireless Network:	KeithsWork
	Authentication:	On Protocol
+-		Configure
)		(Cancel) (OK
Click the lock to prev	ent further changes.	Assist me Revert Appl

Figure 20-3: Enter security information for a wireless location.

	٩
Automatic tion ✓ hotspot	
Edit Locations	
	d to AirPortKeith and has
Power: On	Turn AirPort Off
Network Name: AirPortKeith AirPort ID: 00:17:f2:45:57:5 IP Address: 192.168.0.103	Join Other
Show AirPort status in menu bar	Advanced) ?
	tion ✓ hotspot Edit Locations Status: AirPort is connecte the IP address 192. Power: On Network Name: AirPortKeith AirPort ID: 00:17:f2:45:57:5 IP Address: 192.168.0.103

Figure 20-4: Select the location that you want to use.

Protect Your Mac with a Firewall

- **1.** Open System Preferences from the Apple menu and then click the Security icon.
- **2.** Click the Firewall button to bring firewall settings to the front.
- **3.** To block all possible intruders from your computer, choose Block All Incoming Connections, as shown in Figure 20-5.



If you block all incoming connections, iChat and other Internetbased programs may not work on your system. Choose Block All . . . only as a last resort.

- **4.** To limit incoming connections to only certain programs, choose Limit Incoming Connections to Specific Services and Applications.
- **5.** Click the arrow next to Services to expand the list of services and then use the menu to the right of each service to make a change. In Figure 20-6, for example, FTP connections are being limited to local connections only.
- **6.** Click the arrow next to Applications and adjust connection settings for certain applications as well.
- **7.** Close System Preferences when you're done making changes.

9 0	Security	
Show All		٩
	FileVault Firewall System	n]
O Allow all incoming	connections	
Block all incoming		
O Limit incoming co	nnections to specific services and appli	cations:
► Services		
► Applications		
+ -		
a		
Click the lock to prev		

Figure 20-5: Use a firewall to protect your computer from network access.



Figure 20-6: Control which services are allowed to connect to your computer.

Encrypt Files with FileVault

1. Open System Preferences from the Apple menu and then click the Security icon.



If you're not an administrator on the computer, you must get an administrator's help to enable FileVault because an administrator's password is required.

- **2.** If System Preferences are locked, click the lock icon in the lower-left corner of the screen and enter an administrator password to unlock System Preferences.
- **3.** Click Set a Master Password and then create a master password, as shown in Figure 20-7. Click OK.
- 4. Click Turn on FileVault.
- *5.* Enter the password for your user account and then click OK.



FileVault requires a lot of free hard disk space to encrypt files. Double-click the Desktop icon for your hard drive, double-click Users, select your home folder, and press \Re +1. Make a note of the amount of space used by your home folder. Back in the Finder window, look at the bottom of the window and make sure that the free hard disk space exceeds the size of your home folder by at least 50 percent.

- **6.** Select Use Secure Erase, as shown in Figure 20-8. This ensures secure deletion of files that are sent to the Trash.
- **7.** Click Turn On FileVault. The encryption process might take a while, especially if your home folder is large.

000			Security		
	0	 a safety net for account An administrator of this compassword of any user on the the password to gain access to 	st be created for this comput ts with FileVault protection. puter can use the master password I computer. If you forget your passwo to your home folder even if it's prot ction for users who forget their logi	o reset the rd, you can reset ected by	
-		Master Password:	•••••	9	
		Verify:	•••••)
		Hint:	What is your favorite color?		
			fficult to guess, yet based on someth it. Click the Help button for more inf		D
	?		Cancel	ОК	
-	-				
					_
Clie	ck the loc	k to prevent further changes.			(?)

Figure 20-7: Create a master password for FileVault.

000		Security	
		You are now ready to turn on FileVault protection. WARNING: Your files will be encrypted using your login password. If you forget your login password and you don't know the master password, your information will be lost.	
1		Once you turn on FileVault, you will be logged out and FileVault will encrypt your entire home folder. Depending on how much information you have, this could take a while. You will not be able to log in or use this computer until the initial setup is completed. You can't log in to this account from another computer to use it for Windows file or printer sharing.	
L		Use secure erase Cancel Turn On FileVault Vault protection is off for this account. Turn On FileVault.	
	Turn	ing on FileVault may take a while.	
Clie	k the lock t	to prevent further changes.	?

Figure 20-8: Use Secure Erase to ensure secure deletion of Trashed files.

Set up WEP Security

- **1.** Open the Applications folder on your Mac and then open the Utilities subfolder.
- 2. Double-click the AirPort Utility icon to launch the utility.



If the AirPort Utility isn't installed in your Applications:Utilities folder, you can install it from the AirPort setup disc that came with your AirPort base station.

- **3.** Choose the network Base Station, as shown in Figure 20-9, click Continue, and then choose Manual Setup from the window that appears.
- 4. Enter the password for the Base Station and click OK.
- **5.** In the Base Station configuration window that appears, click the AirPort icon to bring AirPort settings to the front.
- 6. Click Wireless.
- **7.** In the Wireless Security menu, choose WEP 128 Bit, as shown in Figure 20-10.



WEP 40 Bit may be required for some older wireless computers on your network.

8. Enter a password. A 128-bit WEP password is case sensitive and should be exactly 13 characters long.



Make a note of the password because you'll need it later. Some devices support only hexadecimal WEP keys. In this case, the password should use only numeric digits 0–9 and letters A–F.

000	AirPort Utility	
Contraction Contraction	Welcome to AirPort Utility.	
	Base Station Name:	KeithsOffice
	IP Address:	192.168.0.100
	Version:	6.3
	AirPort ID:	00:14:51:76:CC:93
	the list on the left. If you don't	u want to set up, you can select another from is eey your base station, make seure it is plugged ter, and then click Rescan to try again.
	Click Continue to begin.	
	Rescan	Go Back Continue

Figure 20-9: Choose the desired Base Station and click Configure.

000	AirPort Utility - KeithsOffice
	AirPort Internet Music Printers Advanced Find a setting
	Summary Base Station Wireless Access Control
	Wireless Mode: Create a wireless network
KeithsOffice	Network Name: AirPortKeith
	Radio Mode: 802.11b/g compatible
	Channel: Automatic
	Choose wireless security to protect your network. "WPA/WPA2 Personal" is recommended.
	Wireless Security: WEP 128 bit
	Wireless Password:
	Verify Password:
	(Wireless Options)
	(?) Revert Update

Figure 20-10: The 128 bit WEP password should be exactly 13 characters long.

20

- **9.** Click OK to close the security tab.
- *10.* Click Update to upload your changes to the Base Station.
- 11. When the AirPort Base Station has finished restarting (the status light glows solid green), quit the AirPort Admin Utility.
- **12.** On each wireless computer on your network, click the AirPort icon, as shown in Figure 20-11, and choose Other.



If the name of your wireless network already appears in the AirPort menu, choose that network.

- 13. Type the Network Name, as shown in Figure 20-12.
- 14. Choose WEP ASCII in the Wireless Security menu.
- **15.** Enter the 13-character password in the Password field, as shown in Figure 20-12.



WEP passwords are easily defeated by hackers determined to access your network. Because of this, change your WEP password on a regular basis. Change it at least monthly, or weekly if your network is in close proximity to other potential users.

16. Click Join to join the network.



WEP — Wireless Encryption Protocol — is less secure than WPA (Wi-Fi Protected Access). Use WEP only if your network includes hardware (such as wireless game console adapters or older computers) that supports WEP but not WPA.

Finder File Edit View Go Window Help	2 40 1 🕤 🛋	Tue 9:18 PM Q
Contraction of the state of the state	AirPort: On Turn AirPort Off	
100 C	Cther Create Network	Valuetientesche (ABS)
3856600	Current Network ✓ AirPortKeith Open Networks Secure Networks	Luete
	Open Network Preferences	



Join	AirPort Network
Enter the name of enter the passwo	ne of the network. of the network you want to join, and then ord if necessary. You can also click Show a list of available networks.
Network Name:	KeithsOffice
Security:	WEP 40/128-bit ASCII
Password:	
	Remember this network
0	Cancel Join

Figure 20-12: Enter the WEP password here.

Configure WPA Encryption

1. Open the Applications folder on your Mac and then open the Utilities subfolder.



WPA encryption requires Macintosh OS version 10.3 or better. For Windows PCs, handheld devices running Palm OS or Windows Mobile, wireless media players, wireless print servers, and other Wi-Fi devices, support for WPA depends on the manufacturer of the wireless networking adapter. Check the documentation for each respective device to make sure that WPA is supported. If any wireless device on the network doesn't support WPA, use WEP until you can upgrade the offending unit.

2. Double-click the AirPort Utility icon, as shown in Figure 20-13, to launch the utility.



If the AirPort Utility isn't installed in your Applications:Utilities folder, you can install it from the AirPort setup disc that comes with your AirPort Base Station.

- **3.** Choose the desired network Base Station and click Continue.
- **4.** Choose Manual Setup, enter the password for the Base Station, and click OK.
- **5.** In the Base Station configuration window that appears, click AirPort to bring AirPort settings to the front.
- 6. Click Wireless.

202

- **7.** In the Wireless Settings screen that appears, choose WPA/WPA2 Personal in the Wireless Security menu, as shown in Figure 20-14.
- *8.* Type a WPA password. The password should be 8–64 characters long.



Longer passwords are better because they're less likely to be compromised.



Figure 20-13: Open the AirPort Admin Utility from Applications: Utilities.

	AirPart Internet Music Printers Ad	Setting Name Find a setting
	Summary Base S	tation Wireless Access Control
© KeithsOffice	Wireless Mode	Create a wireless network
Renisonice	Network Name	AirPortKeith
	Radio Mode	802.11b/g compatible
	Channel	Automatic
	Choose wireless security to protect you	r network. "WPA/WPA2 Personal" is recommended.
	Wireless Security	WPA/WPA2 Personal
	Wireless Password	
	Verify Password	
		WPA and WPA2 clients can join this network.
		Wireless Options)
	(?)	(Revert) (Update

Figure 20-14: Provide a WPA password for your network.

- *9.* Click Update to upload your changes to the Base Station.
- 10. When the AirPort Base Station has finished restarting (the status light glows solid green), quit the AirPort Utility.
- **11.** On each wireless computer on your network, click the AirPort icon, as shown in Figure 20-15, and choose Other.



If the name of your wireless network already appears in the AirPort menu, choose that network.

- 12. Type the Network Name, as shown in Figure 20-16.
- 13. Choose WPA2 Personal in the Wireless Security menu.
- **14.** Enter the password in the Password field, as shown in Figure 20-16.
- 15. Click Join to join the network.



If you're joining a WPA-encrypted network at your workplace or other commercial location, you might need to follow different steps to connect to the site's RADIUS server. Contact your network administrator for details instructions if you have trouble.

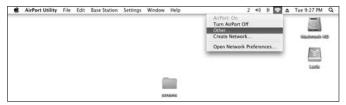






Figure 20-16: Enter the WPA password here.

Disable SSID Broadcast

- **1.** Open the Applications folder on your Mac and then open the Utilities subfolder.
- 2. Double-click the AirPort Utility icon to launch the utility.
- **3.** Choose the desired network Base Station and click Continue. Choose Manual Setup, enter the password for the Base Station, and click OK.
- **4.** In the Base Station configuration window that appears, click AirPort to open AirPort settings, and then click Wireless.
- **5.** Click Wireless Options and then select the Create a Closed Network check box, as shown in Figure 20-17. Click Done and then Update to upload your changes to the Base Station.



A closed network is one that doesn't broadcast the name or SSID, making it harder for unauthorized persons to join the network.

Reduce Transmitter Power

- **1.** Open the AirPort Utility, as I describe in the previous section.
- **2.** In AirPort Wireless options, click the Wireless Options button.
- **3.** Choose a lower power from the Transmitter Power menu, as shown in Figure 20-18. Click Done and then Update to upload your changes.



Reduce transmitter power when you're working in close proximity to others — such as in a hotel — and long range isn't important.

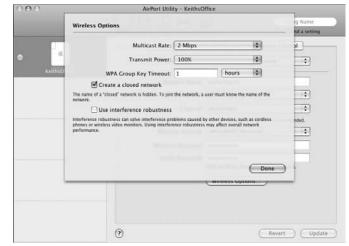


Figure 20-17: The Create a Closed Network option disables SSID broadcast.

000	AirPort Utility - KeithsOffice	<u></u>
	Wireless Options	ig Name
•	10% Multicast Rate 253 50% Transmit Power ✓ 100%	nd a setting
Keith	WPA Group Key Timeout: 1 hours	
	Create a closed network The name of a "closed" network is hidden. To join the network, a user must know the name of the Close interference robustness: Interference robustness and the interference problems caused by other devices, such as cordiess phones or wireless video monitors. Using interference robustness may affect overall network performance. Done	eded.
	Reven	Update

Figure 20-18: Reduce the transmitter power when working in close quarters.

Part 6 Extending Your Mac's Capabilities



"Because I can't find my regular cake stand."

Make Your Computer Discoverable	208
Enable Bluetooth Networking	208
Send a File via Bluetooth	
Create a Bluetooth Partnership	

Connect an Older OS X Computer	
to Your Network	212
Log In to Network Computers from Older	
OS X Computers	213
Turn on AppleTalk in OS X	214
Enable File Sharing in Classic	214
Connect to a Mac Running a Classic OS	215
Transfer Your Files to a New Computer	216

Chapter 23: Upgrading Your Mac217

Add an External Bluetooth Adapter	218
Connect to a Second Monitor	
Add External Storage	219
Install More RAM	

Chapter 24: Installing and Using Windows Programs

/indows Programs	221
Install Windows	
Configure AirPort in Windows	
Adjust Display Settings in Windows	
Change the Startup Disk in Windows	
Change the Startup Disk in OS X	
Reboot the Computer	
Eject a Disc in Windows	

Connecting to Bluetooth Devices

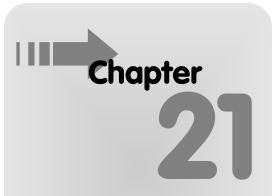
I you've been using computers for a while, you're probably familiar with the rat's nest of wires that results when computers and peripherals are connected together. These wires are messy, inconvenient, and prone to loss or breakage. *Bluetooth* is a technology designed to reduce the clutter and inconvenience of wiring by connecting electronic devices wirelessly. Wireless cell phone headsets are the most common Bluetooth devices, but other Bluetooth peripherals include keyboards, mice, handheld computers, GPS antennas, and more. You can even create wireless networks between computers using Bluetooth, although the short range of Bluetooth (usually less than ten meters) makes Bluetooth best suited for peripherals.

Most modern Macs come with Bluetooth technology built-in. This chapter shows you how to

- Make your computer discoverable, an important step in connecting to Bluetooth peripherals.
- Enable Bluetooth networking so that you can create a temporary Bluetooth network with another computer.
- Create connections called *partnerships* between your computer and Bluetooth devices.



If your Mac doesn't have built-in Bluetooth, see Chapter 23 for steps to add an external Bluetooth adapter.



Get ready to . . .

- ···→ Create a Bluetooth Partnership210

Make Your Computer Discoverable

- **1.** Open System Preferences and then click the Bluetooth icon.
- **2.** Place a check mark next to Bluetooth On if it is not checked already.
- **3.** Select the Discoverable check box, as shown in Figure 21-1.



If the Show Bluetooth Status in the Menu Bar option is enabled, you can also click the Bluetooth icon in the menu bar to open the Bluetooth menu and enable or disable Bluetooth discovery.



When working in a public area, disable Bluetooth discovery to hide your computer from unauthorized Bluetooth users.

Enable Bluetooth Networking

- **1.** Open System Preferences and then click the Sharing icon.
- **2.** Place a check mark next to Bluetooth Sharing, as shown in Figure 21-2.
- **3.** In the Folder for Accepted Items menu, choose a folder that may be accessed via Bluetooth.



If your computer is operated within range of other potential Bluetooth users, avoid sharing private folders using Bluetooth.

	"Keith Underdahl's Mac mini" is the name Bluetooth devices use to connect to the computer		
U	🗹 Bluetooth On	Discoverable	
		No Devices	5
		Set Up New Device	
	ö.		

Figure 21-1: Enable Bluetooth discovery for your computer.

Computer Name:	Keith Unde	erdahl's Mac mini		
	Others can a	cess your computer locally at keith-und globally at 192.168.0.103.	lerdahls-mac-	dit)
On Service		When receiving items:	Ask What to Do	•
File Sharing Screen Sharing			Require pairing	
 Printer Sharing Web Sharing 		Folder for accepted items:	Downloads	\$
Remote Login Remote Manag	ement	When other devices browse:	Ask What to Do	\$
Remote Apple			Require pairing	
Internet Sharin	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Folder others can browse:	Public	\$
Bluetooth Shar	ing			

Figure 21-2: Turn on Bluetooth Sharing.

Send a File via Bluetooth

- 1. Click the Bluetooth icon on the menu bar and choose Send File in the menu that appears.
- **2.** In the window that appears, browse to the file that you want to send, as shown in Figure 21-3.
- 3. Click the desired file to select it and then click Send.
- **4.** In the Send File window, click the device to which you want to send the file in the list of devices, as shown in Figure 21-4.



If the desired device doesn't appear in the list, click Search to find additional devices.

- 5. Click Send.
- *6.* On the destination computer, click Accept in the Incoming File Transfer window that appears to accept the file.
- **7.** Open the Documents folder on the destination computer to locate the transferred file.



If the target device isn't a Macintosh computer, the procedure for accepting a file transfer will vary slightly from what is described here, although at some point you should be given a basic Yes or No choice. On computers running Microsoft Windows, Bluetoothtransferred files are saved in the My Documents folder.

	🔳 💷 🗍 Music		search
			C search
▼ DEVICES	▶ 3 iTunes		
@ iDisk			
Network	1		
Macinto	1		
Lacie			
	14		
▼ PLACES			
▼ PLACES			
	Name	Artist	Time
😹 Desktop	Name		Time 5:05
📕 Desktop 👚 keithun	1971	Artist	
Desktop	Crazy	Artist The Ray Charles	5:05
Desktop keithun Applicat Docume	Crazy	Artist The Ray Charles The Ray Charles	5:05
Desktop A keithun A Applicat Docume Movies	了 Crazy 了 Slowly 」 Right On	Artist The Ray Charles The Ray Charles The Ray Charles	5:05 4:07 8:11
Desktop A keithun A Applicat Docume Movies Movies	が Crazy が Slowly が Right On が Infinite	Artist The Ray Charles The Ray Charles The Ray Charles The Ray Charles	5:05 4:07 8:11 3:05

Figure 21-3: Select a file to send via Bluetooth.

Select a dev make sure it	tooth Device ice to send file: "Right On.mp: i s "discoverable"	3" to. If your device is not found
Bluetooth Devices Name	Туре	
TeleType BT 01	Unknown	
Keith Underdahl	Palm Sized PDA	

Figure 21-4: Select the device to which you want to send the file.

Create a Bluetooth Partnership

- **1.** Open System Preferences and then click the Bluetooth icon.
- **2.** Click the Set Up New Device button, if you see it. If you don't see this button, click the Add Device button in the lower-left corner of the window (it looks like a plus sign).
- **3.** In the Bluetooth Setup Assistant window that appears, click Continue.
- **4.** Choose the type of device with which you want to create a partnership or choose Any Device if no listed type seems to match your device. Click Continue.
- **5.** In the list of devices that appears, as shown in Figure 21-5, click the device to which you want to connect to select it.
- 6. If the device requires a specific passkey (check the device's documentation), click Passkey Options, choose Use a Specific Passkey in the Passkey Options tab that appears, as shown in Figure 21-6, and then click OK to close the tab.



If the device is a computer and you want to set up a secure partnership, choose Automatically Generate a Passkey. The Bluetooth Setup Assistant automatically generates a passkey and prompts you to enter that passkey on the device when you finish the setup process.

7. Click Continue and follow the instructions onscreen to complete the setup process. The remaining steps vary slightly, depending on the passkey options you chose.

900	Bluetooth Setup Assistan	it	
	Bluetooth Device Set Up		
	don't see it in the list, make sure it	r Bluetooth device to determine if you	
	Devices	Type Portable	
	Keiths iBook G4		
	Keith Underdahl	Palm Sized PDA	
	TeleType BT 01	Unknown	
	SOYO-P4	Desktop	
	Searching for devices - 4 found.		

Figure 21-5: Choose the device to which you want to connect.

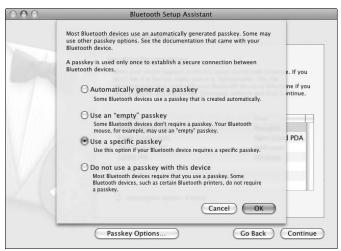


Figure 21-6: Check the device's documentation for specific passkey options.



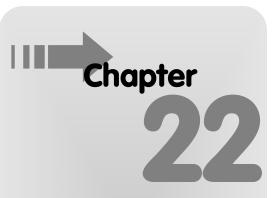
Networking with Older Macs

A pple is always trying to convince Windows users to switch over to Mac, but a lot of us have already been using Macs for a while. Just because you upgrade to a new Macintosh running OS X Leopard, you don't have to abandon your older Macs to the bone yard. Leopard gets along just fine with computers running older versions of the Macintosh operating system.

This chapter shows you how to network with your older Macs, whether they're running an older version of Macintosh OS X or even a *Classic* version, such as OS 9 or earlier. Tasks show you how to connect to your older Macs from Leopard as well as how to connect to a computer running Leopard from your older Macs. Steps also show you how to set up the network hardware for older Macs that aren't equipped with AirPort cards.



When this chapter refers to older versions of OS X, the text applies primarily to OS 10.2 or earlier. The networking features in Macintosh OS 10.4 (Tiger) and OS 10.3 (Panther) are functionally almost identical to Leopard, which is also known as OS 10.5.



Get ready to . . .

Connect an Older OS X Computer to Your Network	212
→ Log In to Network Computers from Older OS X Computers	213
→ Turn on AppleTalk in OS X	214
➡ Enable File Sharing in Classic	214
➡ Connecting to a Mac Running a Classic OS	215
Transfer Your Files	216

Connect an Older OS X Computer to Your Network

- 1. If the older Mac doesn't have AirPort, select a network router or switch with extra LAN Ethernet ports. Choose one of the following:
 - Apple AirPort Extreme Base Station: Choose this if you have only one computer that needs an Ethernet connection.
 - A third-party multi-port Ethernet router: Choose a third party router with multiple Ethernet ports, like the one shown in Figure 22-1, if you have more than one computer requiring Ethernet.
- **2.** Connect an Ethernet cable between the Ethernet port on the computer and the LAN port on the router or AirPort Extreme Base Station.
- **3.** Start the older Mac and open System Preferences from the Apple menu.
- **4.** Click the Network icon. In the Network preferences window, choose Built-in Ethernet in the Show menu.
- **5.** Click the TCP/IP tab to bring it to the front and then choose Using DHCP in the Configure menu, as shown in Figure 22-2.
- **6.** Make a note of the number listed next to IP address. You might need this later.
- **7.** Close the Network preferences window and re-open System Preferences.
- **8.** Click the Sharing icon.

212

9. On the Services tab, select the Personal File Sharing and Remote Login check box.



Figure 22-1: This router has multiple Ethernet ports.



See Chapter 18 for more on network file sharing.

v: Built-in Ethernet	atic 🗘
TCP/IP PPPoE	AppleTalk Proxies
Configure: Using DHCP	•
	DNS Servers (Optional)
IP Address: 192.168.0.109 (Provided by DHCP Serve	r)
Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0	
Router: 192.168.0.10	Search Domains (Optional)
DHCP Client ID: (Optional)	
Ethernet Address: 00:30:65:6d:e1:fc	Example: apple.com earthlink.net

Figure 22-2: Set up your older Mac to work with DHCP.

- *10.* Click the Firewall tab, place a check mark next to Personal File Sharing and Remote Login, and close the Sharing window.
- 11. With the Finder active, choose Got Connect to Server.
- **12.** Select the network computer to which you want to connect, as shown in Figure 22-3, and then click Connect.
- *13.* Enter a valid username and password for the computer that you're logging in to and click OK.



When you're done accessing the network computer, drag its Desktop icon to the trash to unmount the network computer.

Log In to Network Computers from Older OS X Computers

1. In OS 10.3 or later, open the Finder and click the Network icon in the Finder sidebar. Double-click My Network and then double-click the computer that you want to access.



If you don't see My Network, double-click the Servers icon instead.

- **2.** Log in as a registered user or guest in the window, as shown in Figure 22-4.
- 3. Choose a volume to mount and click OK.



If you have trouble logging in, choose Go=>Connect to Server and enter the IP address of the target computer.

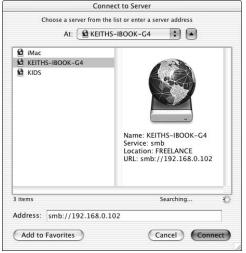


Figure 22-3: Choose the computer to which you want to connect.



Figure 22-4: Log in as a guest or registered user.



Turn on AppleTalk in OS X

- 1. In OS X, open System Preferences and then open the Network icon.
- **2.** If necessary, click the network connection that you're currently using and then click Configure.
- 3. Click AppleTalk to open AppleTalk options.
- **4.** Place a check mark next to Make AppleTalk Active, as shown in Figure 22-5, and choose Automatically in the Configure menu.

Enable File Sharing in Classic

- 1. On your Macintosh running a classic operating system, open the Apple menu and choose Control Panels⇔File Sharing.
- **2.** Enter an owner name and password, as well as a descriptive name for the computer, as shown in Figure 22-6.
- **3.** Place a check mark next to Enable File Sharing Clients to Connect Over TCP/IP.
- **4.** Click Start to turn on File Sharing.



When File Sharing has started, select a folder or disk that you want to share on the network and press \Re +1. Choose Sharing in the Show menu of the Info window that appears and use the options at the bottom of the window to control sharing.

	Network		
Show All		Q	
Location:	Automatic	:	
Show:	AirPort	÷	
AirPort To	CP/IP PPPoE AppleTalk	Proxies	_
	Make AppleTalk Active		
Computer Name:	Keiths iBook G4 (Can be changed in Sharing Prefe	rences)	
AppleTalk Zone:	(\$	
Configure:	Automatically	\$	
			(?)

Figure 22-5: Enable AppleTalk in OS X.

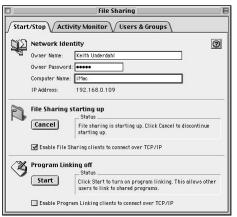


Figure 22-6: Identify your classic computer and start File Sharing.



Connect to a Mac Running a Classic OS

- **1.** In OS X, open the Finder and click the Network icon in the Finder sidebar.
- **2.** Click the My Network icon and then double-click the computer to which you want to connect.



If you can't connect using the Finder, choose Goc>Connect to Server and enter the IP address for the computer to which you're trying to connect. You can view the classic computer's IP address via the File Sharing control panel.

- **3.** Enter a login name and password for the computer or choose to login as a guest if you only want to access shared items.
- **4.** Choose a volume that you want to mount, as shown in Figure 22-7.
- **5.** On the computer running a classic operating system, open the Apple menu and choose Network Browser.
- *6.* In the Network Browser, click the arrow next to AppleTalk or Local Network to browse for computers, as shown in Figure 22-8.
- **7.** Double-click a computer and enter a username and password to connect to the computer.

iMac
Select the volumes to mount Volumes
LaCie
Macintosh HD
Character Set: Western (Mac) +

Figure 22-7: Choose which volume you want to mount.

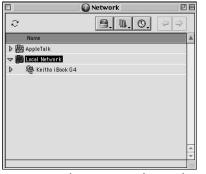


Figure 22-8: Select a computer in the Network browser.



Transfer Your Files to a New Computer

- **1.** Purchase a 6-pin to 6-pin FireWire cable and connect each end to a FireWire port on both the new and old computers.
- 2. Start the new computer and log in as normal.
- **3.** Turn off the old computer and then hold down the T key while you restart it. The old computer appears as a hard drive on the new computer.
- **4.** On the new computer, open the Applications folder and then open the Utilities subfolder.
- **5.** Double-click the Migration Assistant icon and follow the instructions onscreen to transfer files and other items from the old computer.



216

The Migration Assistant works only with computers running Macintosh OS 10.3 (Panther) or later.

Upgrading Your Mac

Vou've probably heard people scoff at the seemingly high price of new Macintosh computers. But Apple packs almost every new Macintosh with a lot of standard features that would be costly options on most Windows PCs. These features include built-in wireless networking, Bluetooth, IEEE-1394 FireWire, and enough RAM (*Random Access Memory*) to ensure good computer performance. If you check the price of a Windows PC that contains all these features, you might find that the Macintosh is actually the better bargain.

Of course, if your Mac is a year or two old, it might lack features like Bluetooth. And no matter how new your Mac is, you might find that you want a little more storage space, screen real estate, or extra RAM to improve the performance and utility of your computer. This chapter shows you how to

- Add an external Bluetooth adapter to a Mac not equipped internally with Bluetooth. (See Chapter 21 for more on using Bluetooth.)
- Connect to a second monitor. The second monitor may simply be another monitor to give you more onscreen Desktop space, or it may be a multimedia projector.
- Add external storage space. If you work with video or need lots of storage space, you can easily attach an external USB or FireWire hard drive to your computer.
- ➡ Upgrade your computer's memory. The easiest way to improve the performance of your computer is to install more RAM.



Get ready to . . .

- → Add External Storage219
- ··→ Install More RAM220

Add an External Bluetooth Adapter

1. Purchase a Bluetooth adapter that is Macintosh-compatible.



Choose an external Bluetooth adapter that connects to a USB port. Internal PCI-card Bluetooth adapters aren't compatible with most Macs.

2. Start the computer and then connect the Bluetooth adapter to any open USB port, as shown in Figure 23-1.



Mac OS 10.2 or better is required for Bluetooth compatibility. With OS 10.2 or better, Bluetooth software is built-in. See Chapter 21 for more on configuring Bluetooth devices.

Connect to a Second Monitor

1. Connect the appropriate display adapter to your computer, if necessary, and connect all displays to the computer. Make sure each display is powered on.



New MacBooks, MacBook Pros, and iMacs come with DVI-to-VGA adapters for installing a second monitor. Mac Pros include two DVI display connectors.

- **2.** Open System Preferences and then click the Displays icon.
- **3.** If a separate window for each display doesn't appear, as shown in Figure 23-2, click Detect Displays.



Figure 23-1: Connect the adapter to any spare USB port.

60	or LCD	
Displa	y Color	
Resolutions:		Whatimusele 48
640 x 480 500 x 600 1024 x 768	Colors: Millions	
1024 X 708	Cather Windows	
	BBC Show All	A90f+
	Resolutions:	splay Color
	640 x 480 800 x 600 1024 x 768	Colors: Millions
		Gather Windows

Figure 23-2: You should see a separate Preferences window for each display.



Add External Storage

- 1. Select an external hard drive that is compatible with your computer.
- **2.** Connect the external drive to your computer's FireWire or USB port, as appropriate.



USB hard drives are more common, but FireWire (IEEE-1394) hard drives usually offer better performance. If you plan to use the external drive for video editing, choose a FireWire drive.

- **3.** If the drive is formatted using the FAT32 file system (check the drive's documentation), but you don't plan to use the drive with any Windows PCs, open the Applications folder and then open the Utilities folder. Double-click the Disk Utility icon, select the external hard drive in the list of drives, and click Partition. Choose Mac OS Extended in the Format menu, as shown in Figure 23-3, and click Partition in the lower-right corner. Follow the instructions onscreen to complete the partitioning.
 - 6

Partitioning erases all data on the drive. Re-partitioning the drive using the Mac OS Extended file system makes the drive perform more efficiently in OS X, but after you do this, you can't connect the drive directly to a Windows PC. Stick with the FAT32 file system if you plan to routinely switch the drive back and forth between your Mac and Windows PC.

4. When partitioning is complete, the drive's icon appears on your desktop, as shown in Figure 23-4. Double-click the icon to browse the drive.



Before you disconnect an external hard drive from your Mac, drag the drive's icon to the Trash to properly unmount the drive from your computer.

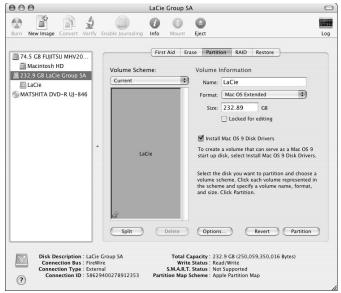


Figure 23-3: Repartition the drive if it won't be used with a Windows PC.



Figure 23-4: The external drive's icon appears on your Desktop.

Install More RAM

- 1. Shut down your computer. If you have a laptop, remove the battery.
- 2. Purchase the correct type of RAM for your computer.



The owner's manual for your Mac should tell you the exact format, capacity, and type of RAM that should be used in your computer. Only use RAM that's positively identified as being compatible with your specific Mac.

- **3.** Locate the RAM slot on your computer:
 - **Pre-Intel laptops:** Remove the keyboard and then remove the RAM access panel, as shown in Figure 23-5.
 - Intel-based laptops: Remove the access panel and L-bracket inside the battery compartment.
 - **iMacs and eMacs:** Open the RAM access panel on the bottom or back of the chassis, depending on the exact model you have.
 - **PowerMacs and Mac Pros:** Remove the side cover for the computer case and locate the RAM slots on the motherboard.



220

If you have a Mac mini, RAM is less easy to install. You must carefully pry off the top cover with a putty knife and then remove the upper portion of the chassis to access the memory slot. This isn't a simple task and is best left to an Apple repair specialist.

- **4.** Carefully insert the RAM card, as shown in Figure 23-6, making sure that the connector pins and plastic guides line up perfectly.
- 5. Secure the retention clips and reassemble your computer.



Figure 23-5: The RAM slot on some Apple laptops is under the keyboard.



Figure 23-6: Seat the RAM and secure the retention clips.

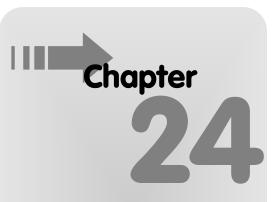
Installing and Using Windows Programs

Not so long ago, writing about Microsoft Windows in a book about Macs would've been like school on Saturday: No class. But OS X Leopard introduces a powerful new feature called *Boot Camp*, which allows you to install and run Microsoft Windows on any Macintosh computer that has an Intel processor chip.

"Why would I want to install Windows on a perfectly good Mac?" might be your first question. In most cases, installing Windows will be a matter of *need* rather than *want*. Many software companies still develop products only for Windows, and you may need to run some of those programs for your work or personal needs. To install Windows on your Mac you need

- A Macintosh computer running OS 10.5 Leopard and an Intel processor chip.
- ➡ 10 GB of free hard drive space for the Windows installation. More space may be needed (I recommend at least 20 GB), depending on the requirements of the Windows programs that you want to install.
- ➡ A Microsoft Windows installation disc. It must be a single disc full version (upgrade discs won't work) of Windows XP (with SP2). As of this writing, Windows Media Center Edition and Windows Vista aren't supported by Boot Camp.

This chapter shows you how to install and run Windows on your Mac. Remember, even though you'll be running Windows on stable Macintosh hardware, the Windows installation will still be susceptible to Windows viruses and bugs.



Get ready to . . .

···→ Install Windows	.222
	.223
➡ Adjust Display Settings in Windows	.224
\longrightarrow Change the Startup Disk in Windows	.225
\longrightarrow Change the Startup Disk in OS X	.225
\longrightarrow Reboot the Computer	.226
··→ Eject a Disc in Windows	.226

Install Windows

- 1. Open the Applications folder and then open the Utilities subfolder. Double-click the Boot Camp Assistant icon to begin running Boot Camp.
- **2.** When you're prompted to burn a Macintosh Drivers CD, insert a blank recordable CD in your disc burner and click Continue.



When the driver disc is done burning, mark it as a Macintosh Driver CD and keep it in a safe place. You'll need it later. If you have several different Intel-based Macintosh computers, create a separate driver disc for each one and mark each disc to identify the computer with which it should be used.

- **3.** When the Create a Second Partition screen appears, as shown in Figure 24-1, click and drag the slider left or right to give the Windows partition more space.
- 4. Click Partition to start partitioning the hard disk.
- **5.** When you see the screen shown in Figure 24-2, insert your Windows installation disc and click Start Installation.
- 6. Follow the instructions onscreen to install Windows.



When you're asked to choose a partition, select the C: drive. The C: drive should be the same size as the Windows partition you create in Step 2. Reformat the drive using FAT32 when prompted to do so. Don't choose the Quick Format option.

7. When Windows setup is complete, insert the Macintosh Drivers CD and follow the instructions onscreen to install the hardware drivers.

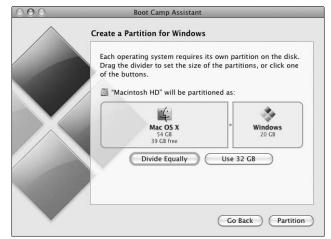


Figure 24-1: Choose a size for your Windows partition here.



Figure 24-2: Boot Camp is ready to install Windows.



Configure AirPort in Windows

- 1. Boot up the computer in Windows and then choose Start=>Control Panel.
- **2.** If you see a list of categories, click the Network and Internet Connections category. Open the Wireless Network Setup Wizard icon.
- 3. When the wizard begins, click Next.
- 4. Choose Set Up a Wireless Network and click Next.
- **5.** Enter the Service Set Identifier (SSID) for your network, as shown in Figure 24-3. If you manually assigned a network key, choose Manually Assign a Network Key. If your network uses WPA encryption, choose the WPA option at the bottom of the wizard.
- 6. Click Next, enter the network key, and click Next again.
- **7.** In the screen that asks how you want to set up the rest of your network, choose Set Up a Network Manually and click Next. Click Finish to close the wizard.
- **8.** To join a wireless network or manage wireless connections, right-click the wireless connection icon in the Windows *System tray* (the area in the lower-right corner of the screen next to the clock), as shown in Figure 24-4, and choose View Wireless Networks.
- *9.* Use the Wireless Network Connection window, as shown in Figure 24-4, to join or disconnect from wireless networks.

Wireless Network Setup V	Vizard	×
Create a name for your w	ireless network.	S)
Give your network a name, us	ing up to 32 characters.	
Network name (SSID):	AirPortKeith	
O Automatically assign a net	work key (recommended)	
	accessing your network, Windows will automatically assign a VEP or WPA key) to your network.	
Manually assign a network	key	
Use this option if you wou existing wireless networki	ld prefer to create your own key, or add a new device to your ng using an old key.	
Use WPA encryption instea compatible with WPA)	ad of WEP (WPA is stronger than WEP but not all devices are	
	< Back Next > Ca	ancel

Figure 24-3: Enter the SSID and choose your security options.

 Attenues tradicio Attenues entre entre	¹⁰¹ Wireless Network Conne	ction 🖸
 In the average matter set works. In the a	Network Tasks	Choose a wireless network
 The field the and and a state of the and the and	🛱 Refresh network lat	Olds an item in the last below to connect to a wireless network in range or to get more information.
Parallel March of tradies Status Reserved Status Reserved Status Reserved Description Description	Set up a vereless retwork for a home or small office	((0))
Implementation Imple	Related Tasks	This network requires a network key. You are currently connected to this
Provense prince of the second	U Learn about versiese retworking	
Courses Disable Status Bajar	Change the order of preferred retworks	
Dhable States Repair	George advanced	
Dhable States Repair	settings.	
Dhable States Repair	estange	
Dhable States Repair	settinge	
Dhable States Repair	settings	
Status Repair	, settrige	
Repair	estroge	
View Available Wireless Networks	setzige	Disable
	urtings	Disable Status

Figure 24-4: Use this window to manage wireless networks in Windows.

Adjust Display Settings in Windows

- 1. Boot up the computer in Windows and then choose Start=>Control Panel.
- **2.** If you see a list of categories, click the Appearance and Themes category and then open the Display icon.
- **3.** In the Display Properties control panel, click the Settings tab to bring it to the front, as shown in Figure 24-5.
- **4.** Adjust the Screen Resolution slider to change the screen resolution to fit your needs and click Apply.



When you click Apply, a dialog box appears asking if you want to keep the new settings. Click Yes if you do. If the resolution you choose isn't supported by your Mac's display adapter or monitor and the screen becomes unviewable, simply wait 15 seconds for the display to revert automatically to the previous setting.

- 5. If the display flickers undesirably, click Advanced.
- **6.** In the dialog box that appears, click the Monitor tab to bring it to the front, as shown in Figure 24-6.
- **7.** Choose a higher setting in the Screen Refresh Rate menu and click Apply.



Again, click Yes to accept the new setting or wait for the display to revert. A refresh rate of 85 Hertz or better reduces eye strain.

8. Click OK to close the dialog boxes when you're done.



Use the Themes, Desktop, and Appearance tabs of the Display Properties control panel to change the cosmetic appearance of Windows.

	Propertie	Screen Saver		Settings
		And the second second second	Second Property and	
				0
Display		Mobile Intel(R) 9	MECH Europe	Chinast Family
	monitor on		Color qua	
Less	-0	More	Highest	
	1024 by 7	68 pixels		
			Troublesh	oot Advanced

Figure 24-5: Adjust the screen resolution and color quality for better appearance.



Figure 24-6: Choose a higher refresh rate to reduce screen flicker.

Change the Startup Disk in Windows

- 1. Boot up the computer in Windows and then choose Start=>Control Panel.
- **2.** If you see a list of categories, click the Performance and Maintenance category. Open the Startup Disk icon.
- **3.** Choose which operating system you want to use as the default startup disk, as shown in Figure 24-7. If you choose Macintosh HD, the computer starts in OS X by default.



If you wish to restart the computer in OS X immediately, make sure that all other applications are closed and click Restart in the Startup Disk window.

Change the Startup Disk in OS X

- **1.** Boot up the computer in OS X and then open System Preferences.
- 2. Click the Startup Disk icon.
- **3.** Choose which operating system you want to use as the default startup disk, as shown in Figure 24-8. If you choose Mac OS X, the computer starts in OS X by default.



If you wish to restart the computer in Windows immediately, quit all other applications and click Restart in the Startup Disk window.

🔄 Startup Disk	90×
Select the system you want to use to start up your computer	
Macintosh HD Windows	
You have selected Mac O5 X on the volume "Macintosh HD".	Restart
Click to restart this computer in Target Disk Mode.	
After you restart this computer in Target Disk Mode, you can connect it to another computer using a FireWire cable and use it as a hard disk.	Target Disk Mode

Figure 24-7: Control startup with the Startup Disk icon in the Control Panel.

Startup Disk			
	(۹.	0
ise to start up you	r computer		
	2		
ows Netwo NAME	rk Startup		
	C	Restart	\supset
Target Disk Mode et Disk Mode, you can able and use it as a har	connect it	arget Disk Mode	0
	use to start up you	use to start up your computer	Consistent up your computer

Figure 24-8: Choose the default startup disk for your computer.

Reboot the Computer

- 1. Save any open documents and close all applications.
- 2. Restart the computer by following these steps:
 - OS X: Choose Apple Restart.
 - Windows: Choose Start Turn Off Computer and then click Restart.
- **3.** When the screen becomes black during the restart process, hold down the Option key (Alt key on Windows keyboards) and continue holding it until you see a screen like the one shown in Figure 24-9.
- **4.** Use the arrow keys to select the desired operating system and then press Enter.

Eject a Disc in Windows

- 1. If your Mac doesn't have an eject button for the CD/DVD drive, choose Start=>My Computer.
- **2.** Right-click the icon for the CD/DVD drive and choose Eject from the menu that appears, as shown in Figure 24-10.



Instead of right-clicking, you can also left-click the CD/DVD drive once to select it and then click Eject This Disk under System Tasks in the upper-left corner of the My Computer window.

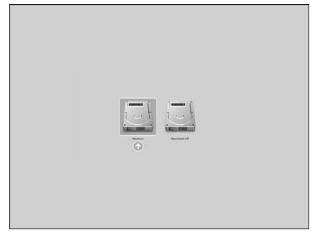


Figure 24-9: Select the desired operating system.

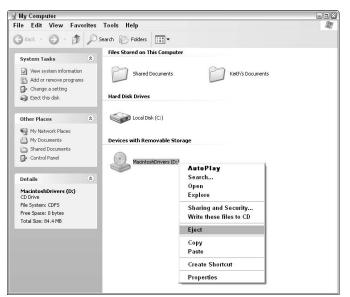


Figure 24-10: Right-click the CD/DVD drive and choose Eject.



• A •

accessibility settings, 12-13 Address Book, 54, 90 Adium text chats, 118 Adobe Photoshop Elements, 151-154 AirPort configuring for Windows, 223 disabling SSID broadcasts, 204 reducing transmitter power, 204 setting up new location, 196-197 AirPort Base Station, 170-171 AppleTalk, 214 applications. See also specific applications about OS X, 51 associating files with different, 29 changing default DVD player, 138 compatibility of, 47 creating bindings for, 17 Microsoft Office, 61 opening folder for OS X, 52 productivity programs, 61 quitting, 59 types of chat, 111 using Windows, 221-226 audio adding movie soundtracks, 160 inserting movie sound effects, 161 volume and settings for, 46

• B •

backing up files, 35, 36–37, 97 blogs, 103, 107, 108 Bluetooth adding external adapter for, 218 creating partnership, 207, 210 defined, 207 enabling/disabling, 208 sending file via, 209 bookmarking Web pages, 84, 88 Boot Camp, 221, 222 burning CDs, 35 movies to DVD, 166

• (•

CDs backing up files to, 35 ejecting in Windows OS, 226 importing music from, 122 suppressing Desktop icon for, 38 chats Adium text, 118 Google Talk with iChat, 115 parental control of, 24–25 sharing screen with iChat, 114 using iChat for, 113 voice, 111, 115, 116–117 children's Internet access, 24-25 Clip Viewer, 158-159 closed networks, 173, 204 compatibility of applications, 47 third-party MP3 players with Mac, 131, 132 composing e-mail, 90 conference calls on Skype, 117 connecting to Windows networks accessing Mac from Windows, 192 changing Windows workgroup names, 189 cleaning up resource forks on Windows, 194 copying files from Mac, 193 copying files from Windows PC, 191 hardware requirements, 187 from Mac, 190 setting up file sharing, 188 creating, .Mac accounts, 96 cropping images, 149 crossover cables, 178 customizing accessibility settings, 12–13 activating screen saver, 14 adding and removing Dock items, 10 changing display size, 8 desktop appearance, 6-7 Exposé access, 16–18 Finder, 31 items in System Preferences window, 6 keyboard shortcuts, 9 moving and hiding Dock, 11 24-hour time, 15

• /) •

228

Dashboard about, 71 adding items to, 73 checking movie times, 79

checking weather with, 75 converting units of measure, 78 creating Web Clip widgets on, 74 downloading widgets, 80 opening, 72 tracking flights with, 77 translating languages with, 78 using Sticky Notes, 76 deleting files and folders, 34 files from third-party MP3 players, 135 iDisk file, 97 media from iPod, 127 user accounts, 26 desktop, 6-7 DHCP servers, 178, 179, 212 Dictionary, 58 digital camcorders, 155, 156, 157 digital cameras, 145, 146 displays adjusting settings in Windows OS, 224 calibrating color for, 44 changing screen size, 8 connecting second, 218 Dock, 10, 11, 52 downloading e-mail, 91 photos to iPhoto, 146 widgets, 80 DVD Player, 137, 139, 140 DVDs. See also movies adjusting QuickTime settings for, 142 changing default player for, 138 controls for viewing, 139 data capacity for, 35 ejecting in Windows OS, 226 modifying settings for DVD Player, 140 programs for watching, 137

• E •

e-mail adjusting settings for, 92 composing and sending, 90 configuring account, 89 creating To Do item from, 93 downloading and reading, 91 reading and sending via .Mac account, 101 subscribing to RSS feeds, 94 emptying Trash, 34 encryption, 199, 202-203 energy-saving options, 40 Ethernet networks, 178, 179-180, 212-213 exporting movies for Web viewing, 165 Photoshop image for Web use, 154 presentations, 69 songs from Mac to iPod, 126 Exposé, 16–18 external Bluetooth adapters, 218 external hard drives, 219

• F •

file sharing enabling, 184, 188, 214 setting up for Windows networks, 188 FileVault, 199 Finder customizing, 31 finding Windows computer on network, 190 renaming files with scripts, 32–33 working with MP3 files, 133, 134 Firefox, 86–87 firewalls, 198 Flight Tracker, 77 Flip4Mac, 137, 143, 144

• G •

Google Talk, 112, 115 Google widget, 88 graphics in Keynote, 68

• H •

hard drives adding external, 219 checking for Combo or SuperDrive, 47 partitioning, 219, 222 requirements for Windows installations, 221 selecting startup disk, 42 space required for FileVault, 199 unmounting, 219 hardware. *See also* displays; hard drives; Mac computers; Windows computers checking specs and performance of, 47 upgrading, 217–220 used for Windows connections, 187 home pages, 85

•1•

iCal, 52–53 iChat, 112–115 icons, 1, 30, 38 iMovie, 156–166 adding movie titles in, 164 applying video effects, 162 assembling clips into movies, 158 burning movies to DVD, 166 capturing video from camcorder, 157 exporting movies for Web from, 165 inserting sound effects, 161 launching, 156 soundtracks added in, 160 trimming clips on timeline, 159 using transitions between clips, 163 importing music from CDs, 122 photos to iPhoto, 146 Internet about Internet service accounts, 83 chats, 111-118 configuring e-mail account, 89 creating Web pages, 104-105 downloading and reading e-mail, 91 listening to radio on, 125 RSS feeds, 94, 108 searching with Google widget, 88 sharing connections for, 177, 178, 181 Web browsers, 84-87 IP addresses, 179-180 iPhoto creating slideshows, 150 cropping images, 149 downloading photos to, 146 launching, 146 organizing photos in, 56, 147 resizing photos, 148 rotating photos in, 148 iPod about, 121 adjusting settings for, 127 deleting media from, 127 exporting songs from Mac to, 126 podcasts, 103, 109 storing data files on, 128 suppressing Desktop icon for, 38 ISPs, 83 iTunes adjusting iPod settings with, 127 buying music from iTunes store, 124 creating Smart Playlist, 123 importing music from CDs, 122 listening to Internet radio, 125 third-party MP3 player support of, 131 using, 121

iWeb

creating Web pages, 104–105 keychain access to .Mac account, 104 sending podcast to, 109 writing blogs in, 107 iWork about, 61 creating Pages documents, 62–64 working with Keynote presentations, 65–69

• K •

keyboard changing settings for, 45 setting up shortcuts from, 9 Keynote about, 61 adding graphics in presentations, 68 formatting text for presentations, 67 inserting slides, 66 making presentations with, 69 starting new presentations, 65

• [•

login disabling automatic computer, 20 from older OS X to networks, 213

• M •

Mac accounts about, 95 backing up files to, 97 confirming keychain access for, 104 creating, 96 photos published on, 98–99 publishing blog online, 108 reading and sending e-mail via, 101 synchronizing computers through, 100 uploading Web page to, 106

231

Mac computers. See also displays accessing from Windows computer, 192 adjusting audio settings, 46 changing startup disk in Windows OS, 225 checking for Combo or SuperDrive on, 47 cleaning up resource forks, 194 compatibility with third-party MP3s, 131, 132 connecting to Classic OS Mac, 215 connecting to Windows networks from, 190 copying files from Windows network, 191 enabling discovery by Bluetooth devices, 208 energy-saving options for, 40 exporting songs to iPod from, 126 file sharing on, 184, 188, 214 finding IP address, 180 hardware for Windows networks, 187 importing music from CDs to, 122 installing Windows on, 221 modifying keyboard and mouse settings for, 45 networking with older, 211-213 renaming Windows workgroups on, 189 resetting default DVD player, 138 selecting operating system on reboot, 226 selecting startup disk, 42 sending files via Bluetooth, 209 specifications and performance checks on, 47 transferring files to new, 216 upgrading hardware, 217-220 using shared printer connected to, 183 using Windows OS and programs with, 221 watching videos and DVDs on, 137 wireless networks for, 169, 172, 173, 174, 175 Mac OS X about applications in, 51 changing startup disk in, 225 compatibility with Windows networks, 187 connecting older computer to network, 212-213 rebooting and selecting, 226 running Classic, 214, 215 turning on AppleTalk in, 214

updating system software, 41 versions of, 211 Macintosh Drivers CD, 222 Mail, 89-94 making Keynote presentations, 69 memory upgrades, 217 Microsoft Office applications, 61 Migration Assistant, 216 mouse settings, 13, 45 Movie widget, 79 movies applying video effects, 162 assembling clips into, 158 burning to DVD, 166 capturing video from camcorder, 157 DVD controls for viewing, 139 exporting for Web viewing, 165 inserting sound effects, 161 launching iMovie, 156 programs for watching, 137 soundtracks for, 160 titles for, 164 trimming clips, 159 using transitions between clips, 163 viewing Windows Media files, 144 watching with QuickTime, 141 MP3 players. See iPod; third-party MP3 players music adding to slideshows, 150 buying from iTunes store, 124 copying files to MP3 players, 133 importing from CDs, 122 playing on stereo with AirTunes, 128-129

• N •

networks, 169–176. *See also* connecting to Windows networks about security for, 195 AirPort Base Station and Windows, 175 networks (continued) AppleTalk, 214 changing Mac workgroup names, 189 cleaning up resource forks on Windows, 194 closed wireless, 173, 204 configuring AirPort Base Station, 170-171 connecting older OS X computer to, 211-213 connecting to Mac running classic OS, 215 copying files over, 191, 193 disabling SSID broadcasts, 204 enabling Bluetooth, 208 encrypting files, 199 Ethernet, 178 file sharing with, 184, 185, 188, 214 firewalls for, 198 IP addresses for Ethernet, 179-180 reducing AirPort transmitter power, 204 reducing signal interference for Wi-Fi, 197 setting up new network location, 196-197 sharing printers over, 182-183 switching between locations, 197 troubleshooting wireless connections, 176 using Mac for connecting to Windows, 190 wireless connections, 172, 174 WPA encryption for, 202-203

• p •

232

Pages, 61–64 parental controls, 24–25 partitioning hard drives, 219, 222 partnerships, 207, 210 passwords administrator, 41 computer login and wakeup, 20 creating user account, 21 resetting user account, 22 PDF files, 57 performance, 47 photos creating slideshows with, 150 cropping, 149 downloading to iPhoto, 146 improving color in Photoshop, 153 inserting in Pages document, 64 inserting slides in Keynote, 66 organizing in iPhoto, 147 publishing to .Mac accounts, 98-99 resizing, 148, 152 rotating in iPhoto, 148 using iPhoto for, 56 playing music on stereo, 128-129 playlists, 123, 125 podcasts, 103, 109 presentations. See Keynote printing Pages document, 64 setting printer preferences, 42-43 using shared network printers, 182-183 publishing photos to .Mac accounts, 98-99

• Q •

QuickTime, 137, 141, 142 quitting applications, 59

• R •

RAM upgrades, 217, 220 reading e-mail, 91, 101 recording podcasts, 109 removing files from trash, 34 items on Dock, 10 renaming groups of files, 32–33 resizing photos, 148, 152 rotating photos in iPhoto, 148 routers, 178, 187 RSS feeds, 94, 108

233

• 5 •

Safari, 84-85 screen savers, 14 screen sharing with iChat, 114 screen zooming, 12 Script Editor, 32-33 searching files and folders, 28 Internet with Google widget, 88 security about network, 195 disabling automatic computer login, 20 encrypting files, 199 firewalls, 198 passwords, 20-22, 41 preventing SSID broadcasts, 204 reducing AirPort transmitter power, 204 setting up for new network location, 196-197 switching between network locations, 197 WEP, 171, 181, 200-201 WPA, 171, 202-203 sending e-mail, 90, 101 sharing resources, 177-185 about, 177 connecting to Ethernet networks, 178 enabling file sharing, 184, 188 finding your IP address, 180 printers, 182-183 setting up IP address manually, 179 sharing Internet connections, 177, 178, 181 working with shared files and folders, 185 Skype, 116-117 sleep options, 40 slides creating slideshows in iPhoto, 150 inserting in Keynote, 66 viewing slideshow on desktop, 7 Smart Playlists, 123 SMTP server address, 96 Spotlight, 27, 28

SSID broadcasts, 173, 195, 204 startup disk, 42 Sticky Notes, 76 synchronizing computers, 100 System Preferences accessibility settings, 12-13 Accounts screen for, 20, 21-22, 23, 26 activating screen saver, 14 adjusting power settings, 40 changing keyboard and mouse settings, 45 system specifications and performance, 47 Exposé, 16 keyboard shortcuts, 9 modifying audio settings, 46 opening window, 6 options for updating system software, 41 Parental Controls screen, 24-25 printer preferences, 42-43 Security screen for, 20 selecting startup disk, 42 setting display preferences, 8, 44

• 7 •

text Keynote, 67 Pages, 63 TextEdit, 55 third-party MP3 players checking compatibility of, 131, 132 connecting to Mac, 132 copying music files to, 133 creating folders on, 134 deleting files from, 135 using as Thumb drives, 134 Time Machine, 27, 36, 37 To Do items in Mail, 93 trackpads, 45 transferring files to new computer, 216 Translation widget, 78 Trash, 27, 34

troubleshooting network login from older Macs, 213 wireless connections, 176 24-hour time display, 15

• 11 •

units of measure, 78 unmounting hard drives, 219 updating QuickTime, 142 system software, 41 uploading Web page to Web server, 106 USB port, 132 user accounts advantages of, 19 changing settings for, 22 creating, 21 deleting, 26 disabling automatic login to, 20 parental controls for, 24-25 resetting passwords for, 22 switching between, 23

• 1/ •

versions compatible with Windows networks, 187 Mac OS X, 211 using Boot Camp with Windows, 221 voice chats, 111, 115, 116–117

• W•

waking computer with password, 20 Weather widget, 75 Web browsers Firefox, 86–87 Safari, 84–85 Web sites. See also .Mac accounts browsing, 84-87 creating pages for, 104-105 exporting movies to, 165 parental controls, 24-25 renaming files for use on, 33 RSS feeds, 94, 108 uploading Web page to Web server, 106 using Photoshop image on, 154 WEP security, 171, 181, 200-201 widgets creating Web Clip, 74 defined, 71 downloading, 80 Flight Tracker, 77 Google, 88 Movie, 79 Sticky Notes, 76 Translation, 78 Units Converter, 78 Weather, 75 Windows computers accessing closed wireless networks, 173 accessing Mac networked to, 192 accessing shared printer connected to, 183 AirPort Base Station connections from, 175 connecting to wireless networks, 169, 172 copying Mac files to Windows network, 193 creating ad hoc wireless networks, 174 file sharing with Mac, 188 finding IP address, 180 hardware for connecting Macs to, 187 troubleshooting wireless connections, 176 Windows OS adjusting display settings in, 224 changing startup disk in, 225 configuring AirPort in, 223 ejecting disk in, 226 installing on Mac computers, 221 rebooting and selecting, 226 WPA security, 171, 202-203